

LET YOURSELF BE INSTRUCTED BY JESUS CHRIST HIMSELF

Very few people know that from 1851 to 1864 Jesus gave a much more complete story of the events that happened during His last 3 years before His crucifixion. A much more complete gospel than what we can find in the Bible. This was revealed by Jesus Christ Himself to a man He choose, namely the Austrian Jakob Lorber who dedicated the last 24 years of his life in the service of our Lord by writing down what He dictated to him through the inner word. He heard the words very clearly in the region of his heart and wrote them faithfully down.

This total work consists of 25 books of 100 chapters each. An enormous valuable spiritual treasure. It is up to each individual to discover and proof the many teachings that Jesus revealed to His disciples.

Revelations that were not intended to reveal to the world at that time but which are now revealed in a very clear way to us.

Book 24

*There is no copyright for this book. This is God's Word and God's Word is free.
It may be copied freely on condition that the text will not be changed.*

*Original German book: "Das grosse Evangelium Johannes" (1851-1864).
This Book 24 is translated from the German book X 119 to 218.*

FOREWORD

It was not the intention to make of this book an "intellectual" translation, but rather to translate it as close as possible to the original text given by Jesus Christ.

The words, expressions and even the sentence structure were kept as close as possible to the original without losing its meaning.

This work was made for every simple humble person whose main purpose it is to know the truth.

The translator

(Table of contents on page 249)

THE LORD ON THE WAY TO BETHSAIDA

1. MEETING THE CARAVAN FROM DAMASCUS



OW we will return to ourselves, and see – but also as brief as possible – about our experiences from the time we left Aphek.

[2] When we were at a distance of about 2 hours walking from the first mentioned city, we met a very big business caravan that came from Damascus and was going to the coastal cities to sell their products there.

[3] However, when the caravan came instead of the bare region, which was well known to them, into the now flourishing, blessed region, they did not know their way anymore and thought they got lost.

[4] When we arrived at the caravan, **the leader of the caravan came to Me** because I was walking in front and the disciples followed Me, and he asked Me: “Look, good friend, we are businessmen from Damascus and we go to the coastal cities twice a year because we easily can well sell our products over there. We always take the road passing through Aphek, Golan, Abila, Pella and Gennesaret, and thus we well know the way. We impossibly could have been mistaken in taking a different road up to here, and we should be close to Aphek by now so that we should be able to reach it in a couple of hours. However, we know the bare region wherein the old city is located. That started from here where the road is very bumpy and goes through those black basalt rocks, and then we knew that we were in the neighborhood of our resting place for the night.

[5] But just look, this is no more a bare region. Everything is green, and along the way there are groups of all kinds of fruit trees while not even half year ago, when we came along this way, we hardly could see here and there a languishing thornbush. So, although we know this road for already so long we must have taken a wrong way somewhere, and now we do not know where

we are and in which direction we have to go to be on the right way again. But you all must be well acquainted with this place and you surely will be so good and kind enough to tell us the right way.”

[6] **I said:** “If you made this trip for already so many times and you did not go wrong up to this spot, then it also will be the right way from here on since we ourselves went on this way and are actually coming from Aphek.”

[7] **The leader of the caravan said:** “Yes indeed, indeed, You must be right, good friend, because the location of the whole environment looks very well like the one we know. Yet, there are regions that, as far as their form is concerned, look like twins but are nevertheless completely different, and such regions can often be seen along the Euphrates.

[8] But I believe what You say, that we are on the right way to Aphek. But what did the inhabitants of the city do with this very big dry region – in the middle of which the city was located with only a few orchards – to change it in such short time into such abundant and flourishing land? From where did they get that obviously very fat soil to cover the bare stones of the whole wide environment, and by what means did they bring it here?

[9] Although we know the Apheks and know that by far they do not possess the necessary means or sufficient working labor to do such work. And if this is the environment around Aphek – what I do not doubt now – then this will certainly not have happened in a natural way.

[10] If the Apheks were like the pious Jews of old, as there still are a few in Damascus, then it could be imagined that a great prophet had arisen, someone like Moses or Elijah, miraculously providing this wilderness with soil and then with all kinds of plants and fruit trees. But the Apheks in particular are hard pagans and infamous enemies of the Jews, and someone like Moses or Elijah would certainly not give such blessing to them in the name and the power of Jehovah, but He most probably would only do for them what Moses did to the hard pharaoh and Elijah to the pagan priests.

[11] So the changing of this quite big region is really a mystery,

and it only amazes us more and more. Our intellect is really too little and too stupid to determine what happened here. Forgive us that we halted you here on this spot for longer than was necessary, and you are also travelers.

[12] But please allow me one more thing, dear and very attentive friend, to still bother You with a question, and this is: did you never visit this region before, when it was still a complete wilderness? Because I find it strange that you absolutely do not seem to be surprised that this region is now a very fertile land.”

2. THE LORD’S WORDS TO THE MEN OF THE CARAVAN



SAID: “You surely will come to know more about the changing of this former desert into fertile land when you arrive in Aphek. We all know very well how it happened and we know the mighty cause of this changing, but the day comes to an end for us and for you, and there is no more time to explain it here to you.

[2] But let this be said to you: if the pharaoh would have repented from his paganism by the warnings of Moses in the same way as the Apheks have converted into the pure, true Judaism, the known plagues would not have been imposed on him, and all the deserts of Egypt would have become green.

[3] The Apheks converted to the one and only true God of which you soon will be able to convince yourselves in the big inn, and therefore they were like an old dry twig connected to the trunk of Abraham and became completely green and alive again. The God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob is still exactly the same as He was since eternity, and all things are possible to Him.

[4] He, who was able to call the whole Earth and all creatures into existence by His will, is also able to provide such little desert with fat soil and plants and all kinds of fruit trees. Since you yourselves are also Jews, you surely will be able to understand the meaning of My words.

[5] Although your Judaism also became already for the greatest part a worldly way of living. And also the old events, which you partly know from the Scripture, you banished to the kingdom of fables. Nevertheless, it is not as your worldly reason thinks, but really very different.

[6] In your purely worldly matters, with which the inner spirit has no connection, your worldly reason can form an opinion and decide, but in divine matters, only a living faith in God and the pure love for Him, and through that for the fellowman, can form an opinion and decide.”

[7] **The leader said:** “Truly, friend, you still are a real Jew of old of whom there still are a few with us, put despite their firm faith it still is mostly very infertile in the neighborhood of our big city, and the good Jehovah seems not to be very concerned about us, inhabitants of Damascus.”

[8] **I said:** “He is equally as concerned about you as you are concerned about Him.”

[9] **The leader said:** “But every year we send the required offerings to the temple in Jerusalem, and they are satisfied with us.”

[10] **I said:** “It is true that you are doing this and you honor God with your lips and cattle, but your hearts are far away from Him.”

[11] The true love for Him that was proclaimed by Moses and the prophets is not green and alive within you, and it is also very bare and dry in you, just like in the temple in Jerusalem. And so everything around your city is bare and dry, and with all the efforts of your hands you never will completely change the wilderness around Damascus into fertile land. You also do not need that because by doing business with everyone you are well providing your city with bread and all kinds of worldly treasures, but you are also withdrawing more and more from God while instead of that, as true Jews, you should come more and more close to Him in your heart.

[12] But if you yourselves became already sufficiently intelligent, wise and mighty in order to take care of your provisions, then God

the Lord does also not have to be especially concerned about you. [13] But travel now to Aphek. There you also may become somewhat greener in your heart than up to now. Then a desert that is flourishing will no more make you believe that you have lost your way.

[14] He who is not on the right way in himself, is also nowhere in this world on the right way.”

[15] When **the leader** heard these words from My mouth, he said: “Forgive me to have halted you for so long. However, I and the whole big caravan have gained much by it. You are a great and rare scribe of the good old style. If You would come to us in Damascus, it soon would become green and flourish in and around the city. But with us the knowledge of the scribes is in a real bad shape and that is why also the faith is lukewarm, for where there are no good teachers, there can be no good disciples. But I thank You now in the name of the whole caravan for Your patience and the effort you made for me. Come sometime to us in Damascus, then You will be very well received by us.”

[16] I said: “I Myself in this person who is now speaking to you and as I now am will hardly go to Damascus, but you can be assured that I soon will send there a true disciple of Mine.”

[17] When I had said that to the leader, he thanked Me once more for the friendliness that I showed to him. The whole caravan moved then further on, and I also quickly moved on with My disciples.

3. THE LORD TAKES ACCOMMODATION IN AN INN NEAR BETHSAIDA



T was before sunset when we came to a city not far from Bethsaida. I already taught and performed signs in that place and its environment before.

[2] The inhabitants of that place were mostly shepherds and fishermen, because all the mentioned places through which I traveled from Gennesaret were located as it were in a big half

circle more or less near the Lake of Galilee and along the Jordan where the river was streaming from the lake to the south.

[3] The location of these cities and also their names are not so important, but the very important thing is what I taught, as well as what I did. Although, *nota bene*, in this time, the last mentioned became for the greatest part forgotten whereas many things that were transferred from mouth to mouth became so much deformed that not even one jota of truth is attached to it anymore. But that is not so important or actually not important at all, because as said, only the teaching, the truth of all truths, that was faithfully kept is the most important for life.

[4] We received a very friendly reception from the mostly very poor inhabitants of that small place, which we, as said, reached before sunset.

[5] There was also a small inn that was poorly provided of everything that an inn should need.

[6] No question of bread and wine there. The only *food* we could receive there were dried fish, a certain kind of roots, dried figs, pumpkins, hazelnuts and sheep's milk cheese.

[7] The innkeeper, a Greek, but a very good and patient man, had a rather big family among whom 3 sons who were all older than 20 years. These 3 went every week to the Lake of Galilee, which was a little day of travel away from this place. They caught fish there and brought them faithfully home.

[8] Also this time they left home more than 2 days ago to obtain the fish, but did not return as usual close to the evening of the 3rd day after their departure, and therefore the innkeeper, his wife and also the other children were very afraid and worried that something might have happened to the three.

[9] The innkeeper told Me immediately about his distress and apologized for the fact that for this evening, if his 3 sons would not soon come home with a load of fish, he could offer us nothing else except some cheese and sheep's and goat's milk.

4. THE LORD REVEALS WHY THE SONS OF THE INNKEEPER STAY AWAY



HOWEVER I comforted the innkeeper and said: “Do not be afraid of that. Your 3 sons will arrive here within 1 hour via Bethsaida with an abundant load, for this time they caught so much fish that they and their pack animals could only carry them with great difficulty and trouble. But they borrowed 2 pack animals from an acquaintance in Bethsaida, and now the transport of the many good fishes goes much faster.”

[2] **The innkeeper**, who was attached to Judaism, said: “May the God of the Jews give You that You speak the truth.”

[3] **I** said: “Friend, if I did not know for sure that it is so, I would not have told you, for with Me the truth goes before anything else, and I am the greatest enemy of every lie.”

[4] **The innkeeper**, being surprised about My self-assuredness, said: “Friend, are You perhaps a Jewish seer that You can know for sure certain things which can hardly be known in a natural sense? Because you all came here through Aphek, and that city is in the mountains that border the valley of the Jordan, far away from the place where the Jordan streams out of the lake. Bethsaida is still in the mountains where the large foothills are forming the shores of the lake itself, and thus You obviously cannot know in a natural way about my sons who are on their way home.

[5] But since You informed me with great self-assuredness of their situation, You must be a seer. If this is what You are, then tell me, in order to reassure me even more, how many sheep and goats I possess.”

[6] **I** said: “Friend, if you would know Me, I would tell you that it is not appropriate that you dare to tempt Me. But since you do not know Me up till now, I want to answer your question.

[7] You possess 30 sheep of which 2 males and thus 28 females of which however only 14 give milk, the other 14 not. The cause of this is well-known to you as the landowner. And look, with your goats it is precisely the same. Are you now more convinced that I

can also know the situation of your 3 sons?"

[8] **The innkeeper said:** "Yes, friend, now I believe Your words without any doubt, and whatever You will tell me, I will believe, for now I am fully convinced that You are really a seer and therefore also a wise man of the Jews.

[9] Look, I and also my few neighbors came here about 30 years ago and settled here with the permission of the Roman court, for no one lived here in this old place, and so there were are no owners in the whole wide environment.

[10] About 50 to 60 years ago, a few impoverished Jews must have lived here, but because they could not get anything from the hard soil except for some roots, they left this place and must now have settled somewhere at the Lake of Galilee. What further happened to them, the God of the Jews will know best.

[11] We were and still are Greeks and we come from Tyre where we exploited a fishing business and by that we obtained a certain capital. We also would have liked to settle in a better environment, but our capital was too small for that. Through our zeal we still were able to partly cultivate this soil, good enough to feed us but only meagerly.

[12] In Bethsaida we soon became acquainted with an old, very wise Jew, who was a very wealthy man as well, and he helped us many times.

[13] That Jew told us that this region, which is now so dry, was formerly one of the most blessed. But when the Jews gradually left their ancient and only true God more and more and forgot Him, He withdrew His blessings from this soil, let heavy thunderstorms come up by which the fat soil was washed away from these rocky regions, and what was still spared from the storms was destroyed after the repeated and long-lasting wars. And so this formerly rich, blessed region became a real desert, and would also stay that way as long as men would not completely convert to God again.

[14] He said that nothing positive can be expected from the gentiles because their gods – that are only fantasy images of men and nothing else – will not help them, and they do not know the

one, only true and almighty God of the Jews. They also cannot believe in Him, keep His very wise commandments and ask Him in full trust, like good children to their father, for His help and mercy. Since these things cannot happen with the gentiles, they can well imagine that they cannot expect any exceptional blessings.

5. THE FAITH AND TRUST OF THE INNKEEPER



AFTER the old man had revealed this to us, I once asked him: ‘Friend, we Greeks, who are considered godless gentiles by you Jews, are not very attached to our gods and we already initiated ourselves in the religion of the Jews in Tyre, and we also keep the laws of Moses as much as possible, with the only exception of the somewhat troublesome circumcision in which we really do not see much real benefit for men.’

[2] The old man said on this that the circumcision was only valuable for the born Jews if they would strictly keep God’s commandments. According to him it was sufficient for God that the gentiles would abandon their idols, would doubtlessly believe in the only true God, keep His 10 commandments, love Him above all and their fellowmen as themselves. God would not ask any other offerings from the gentiles except of having true love in their heart.

[3] When I and still some of my neighbors heard this really very wise teaching of the old man, we decided to completely become Jews in faith and deeds but to stay Greeks for the world in order not to become subordinates of the very selfish, imperious and unmerciful chief priests who think immensely high about themselves by thinking that they are the ones they claim to be before the Jews, but when you see them in the true light it becomes all too clear that they are exactly the ones who by their actions directly transgress God’s commandments.

[4] And now You, who are a wise Jew Yourself, will certainly not say that we Greeks are wrong to be as I have now explained to You. You all should really not be afraid of us Greeks – although

we are poor, we are also Jews.”

[5] **I** said: “I know that you are Jews according to your faith and deeds, and I also came to you to give you real comfort and to strengthen your faith even more.

[6] **And since you believe for already a long time in the one, only true God of the Jews, and glorify, honor and praise Him and also life and act according to His commandments, God must certainly visibly have blessed your household already several times, and for that reason He must have rewarded your faith?”**

[7] **The innkeeper** said: “Listen, dear, wise friend, despite our firm faith there was actually no question of any special visible blessing for us up to now, but this does not matter, and our faith in Him did not become weaker because of that. But we also were not without blessings, for – although it was tight – we still always had what was necessary and never had to really suffer hunger or thirst, did not have to walk around naked or be without a home.

[8] Our small flocks remained healthy and provided us sufficiently with milk and cheese, and our little gardens, which we of course maintained very zealously, produced for our small needs more than sufficient blessings from God, and so we still did not have one single year of bad harvest.

[9] The fact that the storms, which passed through now and then, did not spare us is obvious, but we still did not grumble for that, for we thought: ‘God tested our faith, our love and loyalty and patience again and will compensate our damage that was caused by the storm with another blessing’. And this was then always the case, and also our gardens flourished again – although with our zeal – and produced what we needed.

[10] I also have to add that this region is only very seldom visited by exceptional heavy storm, and when it breaks out now it then, especially on the plains, then we noticed it less in our village than fully on top of the plains because this village lays in a lower part of our highland, as you all can see.

[11] And so we are always satisfied with the blessings of our dear Lord and God, and this satisfaction is also a true blessing of God.


For what would it benefit us to possess everything like a king while God would punish us with a gnawing dissatisfaction which can all too soon become a bridge to all kinds of big sins? Would that make us happier?

[12] And so You see, dear friend, although it may look ever so poor and deserted on the outside, and You might think that God has put His blessing far away from us, that this is nevertheless not the case, for we attach much more importance to the inner and outer blessings that are seldom visible than for our region to be a true Eden and the fried quails would fly in the mouth of itself.

[13] Friend, the one to whom God has given the golden satisfaction and real patience, has received more from God than when He – because of his faith, loyalty and virtue – would have given him a whole kingdom with immense treasures.

[14] If You truly intensely look at it, dear, very wise friend, then You will also realize that we are not without blessings from God. Am I right or not?”

6. THE LORD ASKS ABOUT THE MESSIAH

 STRECHED out My hand to the innkeeper and said: “Friend, such faith and such pure thoughts I did not find in the whole of Israel. That is why it will also happen that the light of the Jews will be taken away and given to the gentiles.

[2] You and your neighbors are already entirely on the right way, and I came to you to increase, to you and in you, the blessings of God, and also to let you see that your faith and faithfulness were completely good, true and righteous in God’s eyes. But we will leave this to rest for now, for we will continue this conversation today and tomorrow.

[3] But did you not yet hear, My dear friend, that the Jews are waiting for their promised Messiah, and when He will come?”

[4] **The innkeeper** said: “The old man in Bethsaida read many things to me about this from the prophets, and he also explained it whenever necessary. But I think that the Messiah, who will be no

less than God the Lord Himself, will probably not come to the Jews that can now especially be found in Jerusalem and also in many other places. And their heart is no more attached to God but only to the treasures and the goods of this world. And even if He would come, then they would not recognize Him anyway, for He certainly will not come with worldly splendor, but in all humility, love and patience – the way of life He wants from all people in this world – and then the very haughty Jews, especially the prominent priests, who have plenty of gold and noble stones, will certainly not accept Him as the true Messiah.

[5] But we already have our true Messiah in our hearts, and those who do not have Him there, will probably vainly wait for Him in their garments that are bordered with gold.”

[6] **I** said: “You are again very right, and so it is indeed. But look, there are your 3 sons coming, heavily loaded with fishes. Send a few neighbors to meet them to lighten their burden.”

[7] A few present neighbors heard this and ran to them at once. They soon met each other to the great joy of the whole village, and no one could understand why they caught so many fish, and they glorified and praised God for it.

[8] **And the innkeeper** said: “See now how God has clearly blessed us. Therefore all honor goes to Him.”

[9] After this emotional scene they immediately took care of the fish.

[10] The innkeeper was the only one in the village who possessed a spring and a small pond that formerly had been cut out in the stony ground. It received its water from the spring and served to give water to the small flocks of this village.

[11] When the fishermen brought living fishes home from the lake of Galilee, they were put in the pond, but when this was not the case – especially in the summer – the fishes were immediately cut, cleansed, well salted and then directly hung above their own fireplace in which they made a little fire and let it burn for the whole night. The good thing for this village was that there was a well maintained little cypress and myrtle forest close by that

provided the necessary wood for the village, and so the inhabitants could dry their fishes and also other meet in their own good manner and keep it for a longer time till they ate it.

[12] But this time that work was not necessary because there was not one dead fish while the trip lasted for the whole day and the fishes had to be brought home in sacks and not in containers.

[13] They all were very surprised about that, and they brought the fishes to the little pond, and they soon swam around in it cheerfully. The innkeeper held a small portion at home in order to prepare for our evening meal.

[14] As the evening was becoming already quite chilly, we entered the house of the innkeeper who had a room that was sufficiently spacious for all of us.

7. THE LORD TESTIFIES OF HIMSELF



WHEN we were in actually the biggest room of the house and took place at a table that was very efficiently made of combined stones, the innkeeper and several of his neighbors came to sit next to us, and **the innkeeper** said to Me: “Listen, friend, who wondrously know really everything, Your wisdom is not of a natural kind for nothing seems to be unknown to You.

[2] You are a Jew from Galilee, and as we all are quite well acquainted with the Scriptures and teachings of the Jews – as I explained to You before – it is somewhere written that no prophet will come from Galilee, and nevertheless, You are a very great prophet, for if You would not be one, then how could You know that my 3 eldest sons went to the lake of Galilee that is abundant with fish to catch fish and that they would come close to the evening, thus today, with a rich catch of fish?

[3] And it was all correct and exactly as You announced it beforehand, but to truthfully announce this You must be a great seer or prophet, and despite that, You are a Galilean from the land from which never a prophet can arise. How should we interpret or

understand this?”

[4] **I** said: “Friend, although I spent most of the time in Galilee, I was not born in Galilee but in Bethlehem, and I was circumcised, as prescribed, on the 8th day after My birth, in the temple in Jerusalem. Based on this, I well could be a prophet.”

[5] Yet, I am not a prophet but I am the One about whom the prophets prophesied that He would come to free all those who believe in Him from the bands of the old deceit, of the night of sin, the judgment, Hell and its eternal death.

[6] So I am the Lord and Master Myself and no servant. Nevertheless, I am now in this world to serve with My love, wisdom and power all men who have a good attitude and will, and to give them eternal life. For truly, I say to you all: all who believe in Me and who will live and act entirely according to My teaching, will not see, feel or taste death, but after the falling away of their body they will be changed in one moment and will be with Me in paradise, and there will nevermore come an end to their happiness.

[7] Now you know, My friend, very openly from My mouth, who you are accommodating in your house.

[8] Those who came with Me are My disciples, except one who is turning his eyes to the world, although he knows and also firmly believes who I am and what I have taught and done. What do you think of this now?”

[9] **The innkeeper** said: “Lord and Master, what must I, what can I as a poor, sinful man say to this? You are the Lord of all things and of our life. Please be forgiving and merciful to us poor sinners.

[10] Now that You have shown us mercy to visit us in our loneliness, we, uncircumcised Jews, also hope that in Your mercy You will stay with us and will bless us and our children.”

[11] **I** said: “You will never be without it. If you will continue to have faith in Me and to love Me I will also stay with you with all My mercy.

[12] And now My friends, something else, more specifically about your poor condition of which I am very well aware.

[13] You have neither bread nor wine, and instead of bread you are

using cheese from your sheep and goats, and *you eat* your dried fish.

[14] But I will change your little land, which is for the greatest part dry and waste, into a fertile piece of land, and in the future you will reap barley, rye and the most beautiful wheat, and you will be able to make good bread of it. But first, your storehouses will be provided with the mentioned 3 kinds of grain and your storerooms with more than sufficient bread.

[15] In the future you also will be able to plant vines on places that are suitable for it, and they will sufficiently produce wine for you.

[16] But for now, fill your empty vessels and sacks with clean water. This will, according to My will, change into wine, and by this you will immediately see that because of your faith and your true love for Me, I am and will also remain with you with My mercy, love and blessings. For I have found with you a faith as nowhere among the Jews, as I told you, before you knew with whom you were dealing in Me. Go now and do what I have told you.

8. THE DINNER WITH FISH



WHEN the innkeeper and all the neighbors that were present stood up and did what I advised them to do. Since they themselves and all their relatives took immediately part in the work, it really did not take long before all the empty vessels and sacks were filled with clean water. When this was done, they immediately tasted the water and were extremely surprised when they had the best wine in their mouth, and they all praised God's power in Me.

[2] And so the whole poor village was abundantly provided with bread, grain, flour and wine.

[3] When they all had tasted the wine, they went to their storehouses and storerooms and found a very big quantity of grain, flour and bread, and the innkeeper found in his storeroom also a

great quantity of pulses¹, of which he was a great friend.

[4] After a little hour they all came back to Me and they hastily wanted to thank Me for everything.

[5] But I said with a friendly face: “You may leave out the gratitude of the mouth, which is really not pleasing to Me, for the gratitude of your hearts is more pleasing to Me than the high song of Solomon which is sang throughout Israel with dumb hearts. Go now and put a good quantity of bread and wine on the table, then we will strengthen us.”

[6] Then the innkeeper went immediately with his 3 sons that we know now, to fetch sufficient bread and wine, and we all ate and drank and strengthened our limbs that had become tired of the rather long journey. Also the 3 sons who became very tired of the long trip, and who were hungry and thirsty, ate their fill of the bread that was very tasty to them, and they also drank their fill of the wine.

[7] After we had strengthened ourselves with bread and wine, the woman and a few daughters of the innkeeper came, and the woman said that she already prepared a number of fishes in the Greek manner and she asked if she could put them on the table.

[8] I said: “Do not be shy for us Jews. We ate already several times Greek and Roman food and did not become unclean by it. For if the food, prepared in an old known manner and in the cleanest way for human beings comes into the stomach by means of the mouth – as needed and in the right quantity – it will not make man unclean. But that which comes from the heart through the mouth, like gossip, dishonor, slander and all kinds of lies, dirty language and all kinds of cursing, will make the whole man unclean. Thus, woman, put your fishes, that were prepared in the Greek manner, without shyness on the table, then we will surely eat them.

[9] Then the woman of the innkeeper went immediately to the kitchen and brought several fish dishes to the table, and the

¹ Peas, beans, lentils.

children brought the necessary tableware, of course *made* of very simple material, as poor people of such small village use to have.


[10] Then I put a fish on a plate of pottery that was before Me, divided *the fish* into pieces and ate it. My elder disciples did the same.

[11] But the known Jewish-Greek disciples from Jerusalem and the few disciples of John who were with Me did nevertheless not trust to eat the Greek fish. And the innkeeper asked Me if they were perhaps such strict followers of Moses, for they very well must know who I was.

[12] I said: “They surely know that, and they also are not such strict followers of Moses, but there are still a lot of old rusty habits in them, and that is why they do not eat fishes that were fully prepared in the Greek manner. But once they will be really hungry, then they also will eagerly eat such fishes.

[13] Now I am a true bridegroom, and they are My brides and wedding guests. As long as I am with them, they never had to fast or suffer hunger or thirst. But when I, the bridegroom, will be taken away from them, then they will have to fast very often and suffer hunger and thirst. And when they then will come to you, your fish will taste very nice to them.”

9. THE SPIRITUAL OMNIPRESENCE OF THE LORD AND THE GUIDANCE OF HIS MERCY

HEN the disciples of John and also the Jerusalemites heard Me saying that, they took the fishes, ate them and discovered that the taste was very good. They soon finished the fishes completely and thanked Me for My words. They also said that despite the abundant light they had received from Me, still much of the old Pharisaic dirt was in them which they were not yet able to remove.

[2] I said: “You will be able to remove all that old dirt in you when I soon will be no more bodily present in your midst. You are too much used to My personality and you know Me, and I am not an

exceptional appearance to you anymore, but once I will be no more present among you in this visible and tangible body of Mine you will become very sad and only then you will realize more fully who I was, am and eternally will be.

[3] Yet I will be personally with you, but only spiritually, not visible to your physical eyes but only to your heart by the real, true love for Me.”

[4] These words of Mine made My disciples to deeply think within themselves, but not one of them dared to ask Me anything further.

[5] However, **the innkeeper**, who became already very enthusiastic after the good wine, said to Me: “O Lord and Master, I know very well that You will not stay with us with this more than holy body of Yours until the end of our earthly life, as You also did not bodily fill our storehouses and storerooms abundantly with bread, flour and other fruits and change the water into wine, but *You did it* only by the power of Your divine will. And since we are still in a very sinful state, we would feel much too unworthy to have Your personality always in our midst, but do not take away Your mercy, Your love and Your blessings, o Lord and Master.

[6] We were gentiles, and we searched You – the one and only true God – in the books and Scriptures of the Jews, and we soon discovered that only the God of the Jews can be the only living One.

[7] We took trust in Him, kept His commandments the best we could, and look, we soon realized that the God of the Jews clearly began to remember us. He gave us the idea of leaving our fishing business and to settle here in this loneliness.

[8] We certainly did not find worldly treasures here, and not a crowd of people as this is the case in the cities where there is only business upon business and *where* deceit, lies and hypocrisy are committed and turn all people away from God the only Lord, and *where* people excite each other day and night, quarrel among each other and deceiving and persecuting one another. But we nevertheless found what we needed to stay alive, especially the peace in our mind, and also a good opportunity to become ever

more acquainted with the one, only true God of the Jews, to always consciously keep His commandments and to raise our children according to His revealed order.

[9] And because we did this, God visited us also personally in You, o Lord and Master, and gave us the reward of our good efforts, and He convinced us all very clearly that our efforts were not in vain.

[10] Since You, o Lord and Master, were already so merciful to satisfy our ever greater longing for You and came to us personally at a time that we could not expect, we all hope now, with a firm faith, that according to Your holy Word You will never take away Your mercy, love and blessing, now that from now on we will keep Your well-known will much more faithfully than was the case up to now or could have been the case.

[11] Although we also will be sad when You surely will leave us with Your holy personality, but we would be more sad if You also would take away Your mercy, which You certainly will not do if, through our ways and through our love for You and also for our fellowmen, we firmly will stay with You.

[12] And do not let too great temptations come over us, o Lord, in which one of us could become weak in having faith in You and in the love for You. May Your holy will stay with us and always be active in us until the end of our days, and after that in the beyond and forever.”

[13] **I said: “O, when someone will pray to Me as you are doing now, not only with the mouth but also in his heart, I will always fully answer his prayer. But now again something else.**

10. ABOUT THE SPREADING OF THE LORD’S TEACHING AND ABOUT BLESSINGS



OOK, innkeeper, and also you the other inhabitants of this village, you were all solidly instructed in My teaching because you really realize that all the laws and also all the prophets involve that man – once that God has been recognized –

should love Him above all and his fellowman as himself. The one who will do this, will completely fulfill My will that I have always revealed to men. And by that, My Spirit will awaken his soul in him and guide him into all wisdom, as you all will soon experience within yourselves.

[2] However, there is still something else, and that is, that also all the other people have to be instructed in the same manner in this teaching in order to think, decide, act and live according to its spirit, for if a person knows nothing about a teaching he also cannot make it as a guideline for his thinking, *his* decisions, actions and life.

[3] But it is not an easy matter to convert people to the pure teaching of truth from the Heavens, to those whose conviction is based on all kinds of wrong ideas and those who know how to acquire worldly advantages from it. Because everyone has a completely free will, and so he always can think, believe, decide, act and live as he wants, and it will be very difficult to dissuade him from his big errors when these, as already said, will give him worldly advantages.

[4] And consider how many people on the whole Earth are still living in the greatest errors and are walking in the deepest spiritual darkness. Would it then not be much better for those people who are now placed by Me in the highest light of the truth of life, to bring all those people, who are in the old, barely imaginably many errors, as soon as possible also in that light in which you are already now?

[5] I can see in your hearts that you really cherish this wish, but where should you start executing this wish of Mine that was mentioned by Me for you and which you intensely feel? Perhaps by going directly on your way, proclaiming My teaching everywhere and bring My light from the Heavens in this manner to the people?

[6] Yes, My friends, that would be all right if there were not such big obstacles for this kind of undertaking, especially in this time in which the whole Hell settled itself with its power and evil

influence over the whole Earth. For firstly the Earth is so big, and a person would need almost 1.000 years to only travel throughout the whole of Asia, Europe and only a part of Africa, to bring My teaching to all the sites and places where people are living and to bring the people on his side.

[7] But now you say within yourself: ‘Yes, for one person this would indeed be completely impossible, even if he would not have any other difficulty to overcome except for the size and the dimension of the Earth, but despite this one obstacle, what one person cannot do, many enlightened men can do. Let them be sent into all directions, then it will not take a 1.000 years before the light of life will be brought to all men.’

[8] I say to you that your calculation would be completely correct if one had only to cope on Earth with these obstacles, which are in itself purely natural and not hellish.

[9] But how to handle these obstacles of Hell? How to convert the almost numberless priests to the light of the eternal truth from the Heavens – those who are highly esteemed by their people and kings, who are greatly feared and almost considered as divine, and who by their magic tricks and erroneous teachings have already for a long time collected immense worldly riches and by that also a very great worldly power?

[10] Look, through the completely natural way, which I now have *shown* for the sake of the true salvation of men, this would be as impossible to Me as to each one of you, even with the very best and most serious will.

[11] However, to work with My almightiness would mean as much as to completely destroy all those people and turn them into animals, for animals do not need to be instructed for their judged natural life, for they all act according to their instinct which has been awakened and maintained by My wisdom and power according to their kind. And therefore, coming from themselves, they are not capable to come to a true perfection of their life. Only certain house animals can be educated above their natural state by the intellect and the firm will of man, so that these can be of

service to him in a very crude and subordinate manner.

[12] If I now would treat all men in the same way, who are standing in these thousand times thousand errors, then what difference would there be between them and the animals?

[13] So what must be done to proclaim to all men the teaching that I have brought now anew from My Heavens to you who are of a better kind, and this with the best of success?

[14] In this case, time and patience should never be left out, as well as having the firm will to confess My name at every good opportunity to the people, no matter of what belief they are, and to make known My will to them. For the one who will confess Me without shyness or fear to the people with the purpose to enlighten them for their eternal salvation, I will also confess him in Heaven before the throne of the Father who is the eternal and pure love in Me.

[15] Look, here along this way that goes from the far morning land¹ to the many evening lands², countless people are traveling during the year to and fro. They seldom consume anything with you – apart from water – and they travel from here to Aphek, but when your little land will produce all kinds of fruits – much more than is necessary for your own needs – and when also your flocks will increase, you will be able to well accommodate many a traveler. And if he will ask you how this environment, of which he knew that it was bare, became so flourishing and rich, then take the opportunity and show the still blind traveler the light of the truth from the Heavens, and mention My name to him.

[16] And when he will accept your light and your faith, bless him in My name, then he will soon feel it and later in his country he will convert many friends, acquaintances and relatives to his faith, and thus he will be a good forerunner for the preachers of My teaching which I will send over there at the right time.

[17] When people from Bethsaida and also from other places will

¹ Eastern country.

² Western countries.

come to you and ask when and how your little land became so flourishing, then do the same for them as what I have advised you to do for the strangers: bless in My name those who easily will fully believe, then they certainly will become aware of that blessing.

[18] And let the blessing consist of laying on the hands on those who became believing, telling them, in your firm trust in Me and in your living faith in Me: ‘God the Lord, who came to us in the Son of man Jesus and who testified through the power of His word and will that He is the promised Messiah, be with you, and through Him, peace to the people on Earth who believe in Him, who keep His commandments and are of good will.’

[19] If you will have spoken out this over the converted ones, they will soon become aware of My blessing and will also certainly become your true friends. But for those who only became half believing, do it only when in time they will believe completely, because a half faith is not suitable to receive My blessing.

[20] And now again about something else.

11. THE LORD EXPLAINS THE UNIVERSE TO OPPOSE SUPERSTITION



OOK, a little misunderstanding about the things of this world – meaning of this Earth – as well as of the different stars in the sky will inevitably soon result in a great number of other errors and untruths.

[2] In order that you yourselves would not fall again a prey to the old errors and to all kinds of dark superstition of the interpretations of signs on this Earth and of those false seers who read the destiny of men from the stars, you also should very truthfully know what the Earth looks like and how big it is, and how day and night occur.

[3] You also should know what the moon, the sun and the numberless other stars are. Because your perception of the Earth, of how day and night occur, of the moon, the sun, the planets and

the fixed stars and their movements, of eclipses, of comets and still other phenomena in the sky and in the air as well as in the water was up to now completely false, and it contains not one iota of truth.

[4] Therefore I want to give you a true light about these natural things. But this will not be easy without visible means, and so I will now, out of My omnipotent power, create such means for you and show you the form of the Earth and its movement, the moon, the sun, the wandering stars¹, as well as the fixed stars and also the other phenomena in the sky, in the air, in the water, and on and in the Earth. So be all attentive now to see all those things and how they will be explained to you.

[5] And as I did already several times in other places, I called into existence a completely natural earth globe of such size that all the bigger objects on the surface were present – in natural proportions but very small – and I explained everything to them, briefly and as comprehensive as possible.

[6] I also did the same with all the other celestial bodies as I had done with the Earth. I showed what the fixed stars actually are, and the central suns and also the shell globes, and so also the comets and all the remaining first mentioned phenomena.

[7] This explanation lasted a couple of hours after midnight, and since I took care that their spirit passed into their soul as much as was necessary, they all well understood what was explained to them. And they could not stop to be amazed about the endless immenseness of My wisdom and power.

[8] After some time of being amazed, **the innkeeper** said: “Yes, great Lord and Master in Your divine Spirit of eternity, all this can only be known, and be shown and explained to us weak children of the Earth, by the One who is and always will be the eternal Foreman. All the things that we can give You as gratitude for this mercy that You are wonderfully giving us would mean less than absolutely nothing.

¹ The planets.

[9] Yes, if I now compare all my former ideas about the Earth and about all the stars in the sky with what I have heard now, I actually can only be surprised how people can have such totally wrong ideas about all those things. Moses and also the other great wise men of the Jews, who call themselves God’s people, must – besides much other wisdom in which they were always taught by God – also have had better ideas and knowledge in the field of what You, o Lord and Master, have shown us now. And still, precisely in this field there is even a greater ignorance among the Jews than among the Romans and Greeks who received their knowledge from the old Egyptians who understood many things about it, although they also thought that the sun is a planet that moves around the Earth.”

12. EGYPTIAN ASTROLOGY AND OTHER ERRORS



SAID: “Friend, the old Egyptians mostly knew these things, and this was also known by Moses and many other wise men. And Moses wrote a big book about it that was kept till the time of the kings. But for the priests, who chased after earthly goods, this knowledge was not profitable enough. That is why they turned to the Egyptian astrology and predicted from it all kinds of good and bad things to the blind people and let themselves be paid for it as much as possible.

[2] It was by their secret plots that they knew how to make their starry predictions to the people mostly come true. The one to whom they predicted something good, gladly paid more than what was asked from him, and the one to whom they predicted something bad had to turn to the priests so that they would turn to God to implore something better for him. But for that he had to give the required offerings. And so it was never to the disadvantage of the priests, whether they predicted something good for a person or something bad, although the bad was predicted much more often than the good because it was more profitable to them.

[3] From this you very clearly can see now why in course of time the priests mostly changed the natural truths into falsities and lies, for they thought that it would not make much difference whether someone believed one thing or the other about the stars, *for it would not be possible anyway* to go there and see if this or that was true.

[4] As long as they believed in a God and kept His commandments, it was enough. For what concerns the form of the Earth and the stars in the sky, it was better for them not to know any detailed or true knowledge.

[5] But in their worldly blindness they did not consider that a small error would soon and easily tempt man to a bigger one, and from that to a great number of all kinds of errors and untruths.

[6] And that this is now the case with many nations appears from the information that you have from all places concerning the measure of the people's blindness.

[7] Once the people will possess true knowledge about all the visible things of this world, the priests, who are lusting after gold and treasures, will no more be able to present their old stupidities as credible truths to them, and the old, evil night of the priests will come to an end."

[8] **The innkeeper said:** "O Lord and Master, I very clearly can see this now. But in not a lesser measure I also can see the great difficulty that will appear of itself when we truthfully will teach these natural things to someone who is rooted in those old errors. For firstly, without the suitable means which You could create from Your divine power, we only very difficultly and imperfectly will be able to show this to him, and secondly every layman will ask us from where we have received this knowledge.

[9] Then we will of course not neglect to call upon You, but still a lot of things will have to precede before such a person will understand who You are.

[10] Of course in time very great things can be performed in Your most holy name, but in a very short time not much can be accomplished.

[11] But we will do everything that is possible, and we will truthfully tell the people about all the things that happened here and what we have seen and heard, and we also are convinced beforehand that our effort will not be in vain. Nevertheless, there will be many who will not believe us.

[12] But all this should not keep us in the least from proclaiming to the other people that You are the only true God, Lord and Creator of Heaven and Earth, no matter from where they will come to us.

[13] But one more thing, Lord and Master, would You not create from Your almightiness such means for us that would stay, with which we more easily will be able to show the other people the truth about all those big cosmic things from which we received such clear explanation from You?”

[14] **I said: “O yes, nothing is easier than that, but not the kind that I made for you, but as if of clay, in order to keep it, and of course on a much smaller scale than those which I showed you in a completely natural way. The rest should be added by your reason and your wisdom.**

13. THE NECESSITY OF BEING CAREFUL IN TEACHING



HOWEVER, be always careful that no enemies of the truth would come to you as devouring wolves in sheep's clothing, and would borrow these means from you under all kinds of promises and would then not give them back so that your teaching to the people would not spread too much among them and the fortune telling would then not be profitable to the priests anymore.

[2] **For when you will teach that I am the true Messiah it will not make much difference to especially the Jews in Jerusalem and your priests, for they will say: ‘The gentiles may believe whatever they want, but we in Jerusalem will stay what we are and will not let us prescribe anything by the gentiles.’**

[3] **And your priests will say: ‘These are very useful people to us**

who truly still believe in some god, because a whole army of no more believing worldly wise men have already grown over our head, and so we should be glad to still find people who believe in some god, for we can use them much better than all those pompous worldly wise men who do not want to give us offerings anymore.’

[4] But when you will explain to the people the true form of the Earth and also all phenomena – close by it, on it and outside of it – and likewise the moon, the sun, the planets and the other stars in a very understandable manner, and the different priests, who now mostly live from fortune telling, will come to know about it, you will have problems with them.

[5] So be careful, and teach these things only to those people who became beforehand very strong in the faith in Me and in the love for Me. Then tell them the same as what I have told you now, then those who will comply with it will walk on an easy road.

[6] I say to you: more than 1.000 earthly years will pass before it will reach the great crowd of people of what I have told you now about the natural things of this world.

[7] However, the eternal life of men will not depend on all this *knowledge*, for they will *obtain it* through their faith in the one, only true God and through the truthful observance of His will. Nevertheless, it is to man’s great advantage, meaning for his soul and spirit, if besides that, he also would be cleansed of all the old superstition, recognize God more clearly and more distinctly and therefore love Him more and more.”

[8] On these words of Mine **they all** said: “We may explain a subject as good, and according to us, as completely correct as possible, but only You, o Lord and Master, are finally the only one who is completely right in everything. We clearly realize now that the spreading of this teaching about nature will be very questionable because it interferes too much with the earthly advantages of the priests, and we will not really hurry to impose this on anyone. But for this purpose we ask You to provide us with the necessary means, so that at a good opportunity we also in this matter will be able to highly glorify Your name.

[9] On this, I said to the innkeeper: “Look, here in your house you have very little space to efficiently store up such things. And so, after your good question, I have no other way than to add such space to your house in which the former mentioned instructive means can be orderly and efficiently stored up so that you can use them at the right time in My name.

[10] I already made it happen. So let us therefore walk through the little room next to this one. Then from there we will go through an open door and come into the mentioned new room in which everything is present that you will need for your explanations.

[11] Then they all stood up, young and old – except a few of My older disciples who were already very sleepy – and they followed Me to admire the new miracle.

[12] When we entered the so-called astronomical and geological room, which was 4 times bigger than our dining room, the inhabitants of this village were completely amazed. I showed and explained to the innkeeper the means, and he understood everything immediately and thought that everything was highly efficient.

[13] While they were greatly praising My power, love and wisdom, we returned to our room, and the innkeeper asked Me if he should prepare a good resting place for Me for the night that would still last for a couple of hours.

[14] I said: “Do not bother, for I will stay here at the table, as also all My disciples are resting here at the table. And the morning is already dawning and we will not need a long rest for the night.”

[15] The innkeeper was satisfied with this and he went also to sit at the table. However, his neighbors went to their houses and tried to sleep, but their souls were still too excited, and thus they could not really sleep.

14. THE BLESSED LANDSCAPE

IN the morning, more than 1 hour before sunrise, already a few of them came at the door of our innkeeper who could still not sleep, although he took for that purpose a few drinks of wine. When the innkeeper could easily recognize his neighbors from their voices, he quietly stood up from the table and went outside to know what his neighbors were doing before the door of his house so early in the morning.

[2] When he was outside, he was really astonished¹ and said (**the innkeeper**): “But look, where are we actually? My house is still the same but the environment is completely strange. There are no more bare stones, everything is green and flourishing. And there upon the stony hill, where not even a poor thistle could come up, stands a whole forest of abundant fruit trees that moreover are filled with ripe fruits, although it is already late in the autumn. Now I really would like to go up there to completely convince myself of it. But all this is a holy miracle of the Lord, and we will only make use of it when He at our side will give us permission to use all this.”

[3] All his neighbors, who were deeply moved, agreed completely with this.

[4] They walked around the house to review in detail their little piece of land, and when they saw a true Eden on all sides of their little piece of land, they could not stop praising My name.

[5] Finally I came outside Myself before the complete sunrise, and they all fell on their knees and thanked Me for that blessing.

[6] I soon calmed them down however, and advised them to go with Me upon the stony hill to see the rising of the sun and to also convince them in the big nature that My explanation of that night was completely true.

[7] We went upon the hill that, measured from the house, was

¹ Literally: ‘he slapped his hands above his head’.

about 300 handspans¹ higher than the point from where the house was located.

[8] From this separately located hill we enjoyed a wide view, especially to the east, and we even could very well distinguish the walls of Bethsaida. We also could look into the direction of Aphek, but because of the rather big distance of a few hours walking not many things could be distinguished.

[9] However, the innkeeper looked first at the purely noble fruit trees of his hill on which we were standing now.

[10] When he had finished his blissful admiration, and the sun was almost coming up, he also turned his eyes very attentively to the sunrise, and when the sun was rising above the horizon he said **(the innkeeper)**: “Now I can clearly see that the big sun is really standing still, and that it is the Earth, which turns from the west to the east, that shoves its lands and places under the fixed sun.”

[11] Also his neighbors saw the same thing as the innkeeper, and they all were very joyful that they could also see this now in the big nature for themselves.

[12] While we watched the morning scenes for 1 hour, a few travelers came already from the east along the main road that led to Damascus and still further to Persia. These travelers, small businessmen who carried all kinds of purchasable wooden and earthen kitchen utensils on their back, came from near Damascus.

[13] They stood still when they came to our small village, which they knew well because they traveled 2 to 3 times a year along this road and found regular customers for their very cheap goods in the 10, actually about 60 cities. And one of them asked another one if this was actually the village in which they did some business now and then.

[14] Since they were also in this region half year ago when it was still completely bare, they did not understand how these deprived inhabitants were able to cultivate this mostly bare land in such a short time and to such an extent – something that even the richest

¹ About 60 meters.

people with the greatest zeal could hardly do in 10 years.

[15] **One of them, a Jew, who adhered to the old ways, said to his companions:** “If this region is the same as the one we know, then a miracle must undeniably have happened. In one of the prophets it is written that this land will once more become green, more specifically at the time of the coming of the promised Messiah. They say that in Galilee a Man from the tribe of David has arisen and performs miraculous things.

[16] But in this time one cannot attach too much importance to these miraculous things because we are really besieged from all sides with great numbers of miraculous men. For as long as only Jews possessed these regions unto far beyond Damascus, the foreign magicians could not come to them, but since all this now belongs to the Romans, they may come in from all sides and do their magic. And now and then they perform astonishing things of which we were already several times convinced.

[17] Probably not long ago some magicians traveled through this place and performed an exceptional good deed for these poor people. A couple of years ago in Damascus, a few magicians changed for a rich man a bare piece of land into a green pasture within a few days.”

[18] **The others said:** “Well yes, something similar could have happened here. We surely will come to know more about it when we return.”

[19] **Then they moved on in the direction of Aphek.**

[20] **I told the innkeeper what these men had said to one another, and said further:** “When they will come close to Aphek, they will recognize *the place* less than here and will not know where they are, because what happened here in your little land area happened near Aphek in the whole wide environment of hours walking. When these people will come back, it will be easy for you to talk to them, for the information that they will hear about their Man from Galilee in the mentioned city will be such that they will no more mistaken Him for a pagan magician.”

[21] **Then we tasted several fruits on the hill, and they all tasted**

delicious. And then we went back to the inn where a well-prepared morning meal was waiting for us.

15. THE SECOND SENDING OUT OF THE DISCIPLES



WHEN we entered the inn, all the disciples were also awake, and they asked Me to forgive them because they slept that morning.

[2] But I said: “Do not worry because I wanted it that way.”

[3] Then they all calmed down, went to sit at the table and took with Me the well-prepared morning meal. This time the Greek fishes tasted good to everyone.

[4] After the morning meal I said to the disciples: “Only once, at the beginning of My work as Teacher, I have sent you out before Me into the villages and cities to tell the people about Me and My Kingdom, and I gave you the power to heal the sick by laying on hands in My name, and to drive out the devils and evil spirits, of which so many people are possessed. You left for a short time, and you know from where and when I called you back to Me again. And look, that sending out had a long-lasting good influence.

[5] We are now in the big region of Hauran¹, which forms the very rocky, eastern shore from almost the beginning of the Jordan to its flow into the Dead Sea. In this region, which was formerly greatly blessed, are the 10 big cities, and in a short time we have prepared some of them with good result.

[6] But there are many through which we still have to travel, for out of the 10 big cities we hardly visited 3 of them, namely Pella, Abila and Golan (for Aphek belongs to the smaller cities), and thus there are still 7 big cities and a big number of smaller cities and other places left, and My time is running out.

[7] I have worked for more than 2 ½ years, almost completely alone without any rest or break, and now I want to take a break of 7 days in this favorite place of Mine.

¹ Also mentioned in Ezekiel 47:16; 18.

[8] John, James the elder and Matthew our scribe should stay with Me. The rest of you should divide yourselves into 2 groups. One group should go to Hippos, a little city which is not farther located from Aphek than this little village, and the second *group* should go to Edrei, which is actually also a little and not a big city, and which from here is located between morning and noon¹ and can be easily reached within a few hours.

[9] In these 2 cities you will mostly meet Greeks and also Romans. In each one of these cities are several inns. Remain in the inn that will accommodate you and eat and drink what they will set on the table for you.

[10] If you will really act in My name, you will be well accommodated everywhere. And when you will enter an inn, then say: 'Peace be with you. We came to proclaim to you the big Light of life from the Heavens of the one, only true God, and to make Himself known to you. If you will believe in Him, you will experience from us, His messengers, His divine power.'

[11] If they will take you in after those words of salutation, stay in that house and proclaim My name and My teaching.

[12] You will find a great number of sick people in the 2 cities and also in a few small places around it. Heal them, then you will reap a rich harvest in My name. But do not let yourselves be paid with money for your trouble, for as long as I am bodily on this Earth you will not need any money to live. However, if someone will offer you something out of pure love, you can accept it, even money, for there are poor people everywhere to whom in turn you can give it.

[13] You should be back after 7 days. Then we will continue our way. Now you know what you should do, and so you can go on your way now.

¹ In the southeast.

16. SIMON JUDAH ASKS FOR LEADERSHIP



WHEN the disciples had heard that, **Simon Judah** said to Me: “Lord and Master, now that we split into 2 groups, must not each group have a leader?”

[2] I said: “When did pure love and the full, clear truth from the Heavens ever need a leader?”

[3] Love, as well as the truth in its highest purity and perfection is in itself the most supreme. So much so that nothing higher could be imagined or perceived above it.

[4] And if that love and truth from Me is in each one of you whom I am sending out now in My name, then who of you wants or would like to be the leader of his brother? How would you measure your leadership if you say and deeply believe that only I am the Lord while also all the others say and believe exactly the same thing? If you accept and believe that, then who of you wants to be the first?

[5] If a good counter says and proofs that 3 completely the same things plus 3 completely the same things are together 6 of such completely the same things, and a second one, a third, fourth, hundredth equally good counters say and proof exactly the same, then ask yourself which one of them should be the most outstanding one, and which one of them should be chosen by the 100 equally good counters as useless leader above them, and why?

[6] Look, I alone am the Lord. All of you are among yourselves completely equal brothers, and none of you should be more or less, for every no matter how minor leadership will stir up the satanic lust for power in the mind of the leader, and will spoil then all too soon the pure love and its resulting truth that is full of life. This was directly and clearly demonstrated by the first kings, and is now more and clearer demonstrated in the temple in Jerusalem.

[7] However, if one of you wants absolutely to be the first of My disciples, then let him be the last and the least of them, and the helper and servant of them all. For this is the order among My angels in My Heavens.

[8] Truly, I say to you: all those who will let themselves be called leaders, will have a hard time in the beyond, because the most difficult task in life for a haughty person – which almost every leader will ultimately become – is to humiliate his heart.

[9] Therefore, remain all completely equal brothers and let none of you ever want in the least to be more than the other. Then, from the fact that you love and respect each other as true, completely equal brothers, all people will see and know that you truly are My disciples.

[10] If you have understood this according to the full truth and have accepted it, then you can go now and act according to My will.”

[11] When the disciples had received this clear answer from Me, they thanked Me for it and went immediately on their way. In those 7 days they converted to Me many gentiles and also their priests in those mentioned places.

[12] Only those who went with Judas Iscariot to Edrei had a few problems because of his incorrigible lust for money. But since our Thomas was also among the group of those who went to Edrei, his selfish attempts were soon stopped, and the whole mission bared many good fruits.

[13] And what did I do during those 7 days with the 3 disciples who stayed with Me and with the inhabitants of this village?

[14] In general, as already stated before, I gave rest to the limbs of My body that was also of flesh and blood. Nevertheless, these 7 days were not spent in complete inactivity as one would imagine.

17. THE POND OF THE INNKEEPER



HAT day, immediately after the departure of the disciples who were sent out, I walked with the 3 disciples and the inhabitants of this village over their little piece of land which they could consider their fixed property by the Romans and for which they did not have to pay taxes to Herod who was also feudal monarch over the Jews in this place.

[2] While we were peacefully and easily walking around the little piece of land in 2 hours, **the innkeeper** said to Me: “Lord and Master, look, outside of the borders of our landed property, the extensive land, which is very bare and which has, as far as we know, no owner all around, is not in the least beneficial to anyone. If in the course of time we zealously would cultivate it outside of our borders and would use it, would we make a mistake by that?”

[3] **I** said: “Not in the least. What you zealously cultivate, you also can use, and no human being will call you to account for that. But it will cost you much effort and work, and from those bare stones you will reap a meager harvest.

[4] But also in this respect I will do something for you. However, at this moment be grateful with what I have blessed for you.

[5] Very soon a great number of travelers will arrive to you and will make you very wealthy, and then you will be able to make this little land fertile unto far beyond its present borders, and your descendants will find the necessary food there. But do not think too much about it yet.”

[6] They all were satisfied with this answer, and we went to the already known little fish pond. It swarmed with fishes, with which all the inhabitants were very glad, although the pond was only the property of the innkeeper. For although all the inhabitants of this village formed some community and lived all together, their pieces of land were nevertheless marked according to the laws of Rome and everyone had precisely his measured part.

[7] The fish pond and also the springs belonged to the innkeepers’ part of land. The water was meant to be used by the whole village, but not the little fish pond, and thus also not the fishes that swam in it. This pond could of course seldom rejoice in a big supply, but this time it contained a good supply.

[8] Therefore, at the pond **I** said: “Since only by My power and will, firstly the big quantity of noble fish in the Lake of Galilee was caught and was secondly brought here in sacks, completely fresh and healthy, and thirdly since these fishes in this pond will continually and abundantly multiply, be maintained and capable to

abundantly provide the whole village, from now on, every house will have the right to take as many fishes from this pond as will be reasonably necessary. But to let the fishes have sufficient space when in time they will greatly multiply, we will enlarge this pond and give it the right and corresponding dimensions.”

[9] I hardly had said these words when the formerly very small pond had the right dimensions, and all the inhabitants praised Me and glorified God’s power in Me.

[10] We returned from the pond to the inn because it was already past noon. And we talked with each other about many things and circumstances in the life of men on this Earth. In the mean time we also took a small midday meal, and after that, we went outside again where it was nice to rest on the known hill.

[11] We rested for almost 3 hours on that hill.

[12] When the sun had almost set, the innkeeper saw a few people on the way from Bethsaida approaching the small village, and they frequently stopped and looked at the environment and did not know what to think. But they nevertheless went to the village and recognized the poor houses which they knew well. They reached now the inn and asked for the innkeeper.

[13] When the innkeeper heard this from Me, he asked Me what he should do, for he would be bothered with a thousand questions and he did not know what to answer them.

[14] I said: “Go down to them now, and since they are Jews whom you know well, you surely can tell them in what time we are *living* now and about all the things that are happening in the world. After that, I will come to the house with My 3 disciples and speak with those 3.”

18. THE INKEEPER TELLS THE GUESTS ABOUT THE CHANGED LAND



WHEN the innkeeper heard this from Me, he went immediately with his neighbors to his house and welcomed the 3 arrivals.

[2] They immediately assailed him with a lot of questions about the cause of the astonishing change of this village and how it could have turned in such a short time into such flourishing cultivated condition.

[3] **The innkeeper said:** “If it were only I who would tell you that it was by a true miracle of God that this village turned into such cultivated condition, you hardly would believe me, but there are all my neighbors and there are my children and my wife, and they can all confirm it as witnesses. This probably must have happened extremely seldom among people on this Earth, and probably never in this manner. But there was also never a time like this on Earth in which the promised Messiah came really Himself as a human being of flesh and blood to us men.

[4] It is true that the great promise was only given to the Jews, but besides that, also to all the people on the whole Earth, and therefore also to us gentiles who already for a long time have the same belief as you have as Jews.

[5] See and listen: this Messiah who came now from the highest Heavens to this world, and who truly is God and man at the same time, also came to us and took care of our spiritual and besides that also our physical poverty. He blessed our desert and changed it by His almighty will into a fertile piece of land.

[6] He also richly provided us with everything that man needs to feed and to strengthen his body. Besides that, He also informed us, in a visible and for the mind very understandable manner, about the nature of our Earth and the phenomena in it and on its surface and in the air nearby, and also about the whole starry sky. And in this manner He freed us from the old, dark superstition of the gentiles and the Jews.

[7] But we cannot talk about this subject with you, because within your Jews there is still a lot of old superstition. But at a next opportunity we will be able to talk further with you about this.

[8] With this I truthfully told you now in which manner this little region of ours had suddenly become abundantly flourishing. And here you have sufficient witnesses standing before you. If you want to ask them, they will tell you the same.”

[9] **One of the Jews, who was an elder and scribe in Bethsaida, and who had spoken already several times with our innkeeper, said:** “Yes, we must indeed believe from you that your village and piece of land was brought into cultivation the way you just told us because this could impossibly have happened in a natural way, considering the infertility of the soil. Because from where could you have taken the fertile soil to cover for the greatest part this bare, rocky piece of land which, as far as your part is concerned, must measure more than a 1.000 mornings¹, and from where could you have taken the great number of fruit trees of all kinds, and how could you have planted them here so that they are now big and full of fruits as if they were planted here 30 years ago?

[10] So this is undoubtedly a perfect miracle of God, and therefore we want to believe that the Man who did this unheard-of miracle for you here must certainly be the promised Messiah Himself or at least a great prophet. But when was He with you and how long did He need to bless this part of land of yours, and where did He leave you?”

[11] **The innkeeper said:** “Friends, He came here with His disciples yesterday close to the evening. He sent out most of His disciples to proclaim His teaching. He Himself is still here with 3 of His disciples and He will stay here for another 7 days. With this, I told you more than what you wanted to know from me.

[12] He directly will appear Himself. Then You can discuss and talk with Him yourselves about all the rest.”

¹ Old measuring method to measure land. Meaning: as much land as a team of horses could plough in 1 morning, or as much as 1 man could sow in 1 morning. Very different depending on the region in Germany. The Austrian morning was probably about 0.25 ha.

19. THE GUESTS RECOGNIZE THE LORD



WHEN the 3 Jews heard the innkeeper say that, they became very shy and did not know what to answer and whether they should stay or leave.

[2] Only after a while, **the eldest** asked the innkeeper, who was then giving bread and wine to the 3: “What does He look like, so that we can immediately greet Him when He comes?”

[3] **The innkeeper** said: “Just take the bread and wine, and when He will come in, you will have no difficulty to recognize Him. If we gentiles were able to quickly recognize Him, then you as real Jews of old will recognize Him sooner.”

[4] **On this, the 3 took at once bread and wine, and to them they were equally clean and tasted delicious, and they asked the innkeeper from where he obtained that bread and wine, for they well knew that he was not able to serve this kind of food to them before.**

[5] **The innkeeper** said: “I just told you that the Messiah richly provided us with everything, also for our body. The One who can make a desert to flourish by His will, will also be capable to provide bread and wine for us poor people who longed for Him for already a long time. You really are eating bread from the Heavens, as well as the wine that is also no fruit of this Earth.”

[6] **When the 3 Jews had also heard that, the eldest** said: “Moses did also receive the manna from God for the Israelites, and the rock which he hit with his shepherd’s staff gave immediately sweet, clean drinking water, but Moses did not receive such bread or such wine from the hand of Jehovah, and also the desert did in all those 40 years not become green for Israel and their meager flocks. Apparently, here is more than Moses, Aaron, Joshua, Elijah and all the other prophets.”

[7] **While the eldest** said these words, **I** with the 3 disciples entered the inn and said to the 3: “Peace be with you. Do not feel embarrassed because of us, but eat and drink and strengthen yourselves with the wine, for you do not have such bread and such

wine in Bethsaida and Gadara.”

[8] When I said these words to **the 3**, they immediately stood up from their chairs, bowed deeply before Me and said: “Lord, You are the One for whom everything is possible, and You also are the promised great Messiah, the new great King of the Jews who will establish a Kingdom that no enemy will be able to take away from us anymore until the end of the world. Therefore: hail to You, the great Son of David.”

[9] I said: “It is true that I am establishing an endless great Kingdom, but not an earthly one but a true everlasting Kingdom of God for the soul and the spirit of man. In that Kingdom, all those who will believe in Me and will live according to My teaching will have eternal life.

[10] You understand the Scripture to the letter, but you never understood it to the most inner spirit of the truth if you think that I as the promised One, who came now into this world as the Messiah, the eternal Son of the eternal Father, will establish for the Jews an everlasting kingdom on this Earth, where everything, even the Earth itself, is temporary and perishable. For not only this whole Earth, but also the whole firmament that you can see will perish. Then how could there be established an everlasting kingdom on this Earth for the Jews? Thus strengthen yourselves now, so that you may grasp and understand the inner spirit of the Scripture.”

[11] After these words of Mine, the 3 looked surprised at each other, and **the eldest** said: “Hear, this sounds quite different from *what they say* in the temple in Jerusalem. What should we observe? The Pharisees and the scribes are teaching in the temple, sitting on the chairs of Moses and Aaron around the high priest, and they read and explain the Scripture to the people completely to the letter, but on the authority of their word and their will no desert becomes green and no bare stones are covered with fertile soil.

[12] This Master teaches quite differently and shows that we never understood the Scripture according to the spirit, and His statements contradict directly those of the temple, but on His word and His

will the desert is flourishing and the stones are covered with the right quantity of fat soil. So it is only in Him that the full truth can be found.

[13] Therefore, we want to stay with this Master and turn our backs to the temple for all times. So let us drink to the well being of all those who already did what we only are doing now.”

[14] **On this, the 3 lifted their cup and emptied it to the last drop.**

20. THE CONFESSION OF THE ELDEST



WHEN they became very joyful, **the eldest** turned to Me again and said: “Lord and Master from the highest heights of the Heavens, You certainly must have visited also Jerusalem? Did they also recognize You in the temple, just as we did here? What did they say about Your coming into this world?”

[2] **I** said: “The great, extremely selfish blindness of the Jews in Jerusalem will not recognize the divine light and will also have no part in it, for the light of the Jews will be taken away and given to the gentiles.

[3] **I** already taught several times in the temple and performed miracles, and of all those who think highly about themselves, letting themselves highly be praised by everyone, no one believed in Me. And so it will come as a witness over them, that My light will be taken away from them and will abundantly be given to the gentiles, regardless of what has been written about them.

[4] **Look** at these gentiles, and talk also with the many gentiles of other villages and cities, and ask them what they think about Me. Truly, you will receive much light from them.

[5] **Go** to Jerusalem and many other Jewish cities and villages, then you will be very surprised about the most insulting sayings about Me. And nevertheless, I always taught the same pure truth of life everywhere and performed great signs. Now what should I do with this kind of wicked Jews?”

[6] **The eldest said:** “Lord and Master, do with them what You have done with the inhabitants of Sodom.”

[7] **I said:** “Not yet, for there are still a few righteous ones in those cities and villages. But it will not take long anymore, because those few righteous ones, for the sake of My name and My teaching, will be persecuted by the blind and haughty, proud worldly people. So much so that finally not 1 righteous one in My light will be able to stay in such city. Then their measure will be full, and what will happen to them will be worse than what once happened to Sodom and Gomorrah. But let us leave this alone now and talk about something else.

[8] **Tell Me,** did you not hear anything about Me and My appearance? Because 2 years ago I also came near Gadara and there I set the 2 very possessed men free of their many evil spirits who then took possession of a herd of pigs and jumped with them into the lake. And did you not hear that once near Bethsaida I fed several thousands of people in a desert with only a few breads and fishes, so that after the feeding, several baskets were left over with what they could not finish?”

[9] **The elder said:** “Yes, Lord and Master, we all heard many things about it, and we thought that the Man of Wonders was a magician who probably learned His wonders with the famous Essenes and whose name was Jesus, and they said that He was a Nazarene and actually the son of Joseph the carpenter whom I personally knew well.

[10] This was the opinion of the blind people at that time, and we also could not imagine anything else. For what else could we think of the son of a carpenter from Nazareth except that He was a very handy magician who knew the old teaching of the Jews and who presented Himself to the credulous people as a prophet in order to draw them to Himself with the purpose that was only known to Him?

[11] If we ourselves would have witnessed those deeds of Yours, we certainly would have had another opinion, even if You had been ten times the son of Joseph.

[12] But now we are witnesses ourselves of Your deed which no Essene can accomplish but only God. And even if You are now, as a human being, the son of Joseph – the carpenter from Nazareth – which You also must be, this will not in the least confuse our belief in You, and according to us You are and will remain the promised Messiah.

[13] Let this confession of ours not be displeasing to You, and do not withhold us Your blessing.”

21. WHO IS MY NEIGHBOR?



SAID: “The living faith that you have in Me will protect you against this, and if you will show your faith in Me through works of true neighborly love, you also will be entirely aware that I truly am the promised Messiah, and you will then reread in the prophets and see that everything written about Me in the Scripture was accomplished by Me and everything confirmed in Me.”

[2] **The eldest said:** “Lord and Master, to show neighborly love to the people would be all right if we only would know very clearly who actually our neighbor is.”

[3] **I said:** “Your neighbor is every human being, friend or enemy, who needs your help in no matter what good manner that is in accordance with God’s commandments. But it is obvious that you should not help anyone who acts against God’s commandments, but should withhold him from doing it. If you will do that, you will practice neighborly love and your reward in Heaven will be great.

[4] **If poor people come to you and grieve about their need, help them according to your strength and ability, because what you will do for the poor I will consider it as if you have done it for Me, and I will repay you already here and even more everlastingly later in My Kingdom.**

[5] **When some true disciple and prophet in My name will come to you, accommodate him, listen to him and show love to him, for by doing so you have accommodated Me and you will also be worthy**

of the reward of a prophet.

[6] But soon a great number of false prophets in My name will arise. They will teach the people for the sake of their own wallet and will deceive them through false signs which they learned from the magicians. Do not accommodate such false teachers and prophets, even when they loudly shout: 'Look, here, or, there is the Messiah, the anointed One of God', but show them with love and earnest that they are and act against Me. If they will listen to you and will give up their wrongdoing, then you also may consider and treat them as friends. But when they will not listen to you and will not repent, then chase them out of the community.

[7] You will easily recognize a false teacher and prophet from his selfish works and deeds that are full of self-love, because from thistles you do not reap figs and from thorns no grapes.


[8] Be always full of love, meekness, humility, mercy, justice and truth to everyone, then I also will be like that to you. Do not become deaf or hardhearted to the voice of poverty concerning the spirit as well as the body, then I also will not be like that to you when in some need you will lift up your voice to Me. With the measure with which you will measure, will also be measured to you.

[9] If you – as I very well know – possess big earthly treasures and you lend it only with a good interest to those who can repay you at a fixed time, then you also have practiced a certain kind of neighborly love, but such neighborly love which rewards yourselves with a good interest will not be taken into account for a reward by Me. However, if you also lend your treasures to the poor without interest, of whom you know that they will not have it easy to pay you back, then I will be the One who will pay the interest and will repay your treasures, and no one will fall short with Me.

[10] Look at the inhabitants of this village, who were poor. They only could live very scantily, but when poor or needy people came to them, they were immediately accommodated and were taken care of as possible without repayment. I surely knew that and came to them now at the right time as the best Rewarder, and none of

them will say that I came too early or too late. Do likewise, then at the right time I also will be your Rewarder.

22. THE PARABLE OF THE LANDOWNER

 HE Pharisees, the usurers who always know how to safely lend their large quantity of gold and silver against high interest rates to other big estate agents and usurers, and then spoil and maliciously squander their high lending interests to whores and falsely swearing adulteresses, and when poor and needy people come to them, they say: ‘Turn to God, He will help you, for we are poor ourselves and must beg’ – those will later have it very hard to give an account to Me.

[2] Such false servants of God, who preach to the people about love for God and fellowman which they themselves never practiced, are to Me the worst sinners and offenders and will receive their reward for it in the beyond from the prince of Hell whom they served, because such fornicators, adulterers, usurers, revelers, and with that the greatest blasphemer of God, will not enter My Kingdom. So do not take their example.

[3] How can one of you say to his fellowman: ‘In your need, turn to God who loves you above all. He will help you’, when he himself does not believe in God and does really not love Him above all.

[4] The one who already does not love his needy fellowman whom he can see, how shall he love God above all whom he does not see? Love for God on the part of man is determined by the love for his fellowman. The one who says that for one’s salvation it is only necessary to love God above all, but then closes his heart and door for his poor fellowman, is in great error because love for God is without love for fellowman eternally not thinkable and also not possible. So love your fellowman, because they are just like you God’s children, then by doing so you will also love God above all.

[5] Look, once there was a very rich landowner who had a lot of possessions, and everyone who was in his service had a good

life. That landowner had also many children whom he loved and whom he sent to worldly schools, so that they should become experienced men.

[6] But he only gave what was most necessary for them in the worldly schools, so that they would not indulge and become lazy and then unsuitable to manage his possessions.

[7] These children were not so well off in those worldly schools, and they often had a real poor subsistence and not seldom they asked strange people for alms.

[8] Some of the people they contacted said: ‘Oh, you have a very rich father. Contact him, he will help you’, and they did not give anything to the children.

[9] A few others thought however within their softer heart within themselves: ‘We know that the father of these children is very rich and he would like to help his children who study here, but he must have very wise reasons not to do so, and these children with us are clearly suffering and in need and we will help them the best we can.’ And what they thought they also did.

[10] After some time, the very rich landowner himself came to that foreign worldly city where his children had to acquire various knowledge and experience, and he took detailed information as to who showed love to his children.

[11] And look, the children brought their father to all the places where love had been shown to them, and the father rewarded the benefactors of his children a hundred times and took the greatest benefactors with him on his possessions and treated them as his own children.

[12] Look, here before you stands in Me that landowner. The poor in this world are truly My children everywhere. The rich however are mostly the children of this world.

[13] In order that My children would not indulge, I let them also in this hard – but for them extremely beneficial – school of life to suffer need. And in their need they come to the rich of the world. What these will do for My children, I also will do for them, and I will reward them already here manifold and in My Kingdom

endlesslyfold¹.

[14] So the one who has the love of the children by his love for the children, has also the love of the Father and has acquired by that the eternal reward. Do you now understand what it means to love God above all?”

23. THE LORD PREDICTS HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION



HE eldest said: “O Lord and Master and true Father of men, yes, only now I understand for the first time what it means: ‘Love God above all.’

[2] So the one who truly loves His children and perceives the wisdom of the Father, loves God above all as the only true Father of all men. And so, neighborly love is the highest virtue of life in this world, and we will make effort to practice it everywhere with all our strength.”

[3] After these words of the elder, the woman of the innkeeper came to tell us that the morning meal was ready. The innkeeper asked Me if he should let *the fried fishes* be brought on the table that was *not* set yet.

[4] **I said:** “When I satiated a few thousand of people in the desert with little bread and fishes, there also was not a set table. If one can eat bread and wine from an unset table, then why not a few fried fishes? So let the fishes be brought on this unset table now, then we will eat them.”

[5] This I arranged especially for the 3 Jews, because a table that was covered with a completely clean tablecloth was still very important to them, for according to their law, a Jew who would take a warm meal from a table that was not covered with a clean tablecloth could become impure.

[6] So **the 3** looked at Me while they secretly thought within

¹ Although this word does not exist in English, this is the literal translation and shows a better meaning.

themselves: ‘What, do You not keep all the precepts of Moses anymore?’

[7] **But I** said: “Then what do you think? Did the Israelites in the desert also eat from tables with clean tablecloths when they ate the manna?”

[8] **The eldest** said: “Lord and Master, they certainly did not have that.”

[9] **I** said: “So then we also can eat fishes that are put on an unset table. What is pure to Me, let that also be pure to you. For it is also written that one should not eat bread with unwashed hands, and despite that, you just put the bread in your mouth in My presence with unwashed hands and you nevertheless remained pure for Me. And when you are pure for Me, then who will accuse you of impurity? Maybe a blind Pharisee in the temple in Jerusalem? Innkeeper, let the fishes be brought in, then we will eat them and remain pure.”

[10] With that answer of Mine, the 3 Jews were completely satisfied, and they ate the fishes with us without any further objection.

[11] These 3 Jews stayed another 3 full days with Me. And I and the 3 disciples, who stayed with Me, explained many things to them from the Scripture, especially for what concerns the creation and the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel, and *we* put them also in the right light about the natural things of this Earth.

[12] On the 4th day they went to Aphek on My advice to also there convince themselves as to what I had done there for the gentiles who became believing. Before they took leave from Me, the eldest asked Me if they also should travel to Jerusalem to open there the eyes of the blind temple servants regarding Me.

[13] **I** said: “Leave this out, for when they do not want to listen to Myself and do not believe in Me despite the many signs that I have done before their eyes, they will even less listen to you nor believe your words. And they surely would throw you in jail and let you be chastised. So leave this out and stay where you are. Proclaim My gospel at a right opportunity to the gentiles and give them the light

of the truth that I gave you. But do not add anything and do also not leave out anything.

[14] I gave it to you freely, so give it likewise freely to everyone who hungers and thirsts for it. However, do not throw these pearls to the real worldly pigs of men.

[15] But close to Easter I will go Myself one more time to Jerusalem, and then will happen with Me what I have explained to you in detail from the prophets. When you will hear about it, do not be offended and remember that I told you beforehand and that also through this the Scripture will be fulfilled up to the last stroke¹.

[16] When I will arise from the dead of the body on the 3rd day, I will come again to you all, as I am standing before you all now, and then I will strengthen you all with My Spirit.

[17] So we will not see each other for a short time and then we will see each other again, and this will comfort you.

[18] Then I blessed the 3 old Jews and they went to Aphek as I mentioned before.

[19] It is obvious that these 3, when they came near the city, were more and more amazed about the great sign, and when they were completely in the city and in the same inn, and were also received by the innkeeper with great friendliness, the 3 as well as the innkeeper and all those who were with them could hardly stop glorifying and praising My name.

[20] And what did I do during those remaining few days in our lovable little village?

[21] Every day travelers came and took up accommodation with the innkeeper and informed zealously to know how this region could have been made that flourishing. Some things were told to a few of them, but to most of them not, because those travelers were mostly businessmen who had no sense for these spiritual things, and so no one of us made effort to initiate such purely worldly men into the truths of life. And also the inhabitants of the village

¹ One of the lines of a letter of the alphabet.

realized that one should not throw pearls as common feed to worldly pigs.

[22] The 7th day arrived, and close to the evening My disciples, who were sent out, came all back in a good mood to Me in the village, and they hardly could stop to relate how for the greatest part they had done good things in My name.

[23] And I said: “You know that I know how you have worked, and so you are worthy of the reward to be My disciples, but now you should rest and strengthen yourselves with food and drink.”

[24] Wine and bread was brought at once, and after that also fish.

[25] After the evening meal, the returned disciples went immediately to rest. However, I stayed awake until the morning with the innkeeper and the 3 disciples who had stayed with Me.

THE LORD IN 2 OTHER CITIES

24. TRAVELING FURTHER



E continued our trip in the morning after I first blessed the whole village.

[2] The innkeeper and several citizens went gratefully with us a long way and returned then home. And we went to a city that was about 1 day's trip away. It was only close to the evening when we arrived and were well accommodated in an old inn.

[3] Also in this city, which was mostly inhabited by gentiles, I stayed for a few days with My disciples. I taught the people about the Kingdom of God on this Earth as I did in the former cities and villages and confirmed My teaching with effective signs that were useful for people.

[4] Also here, most of the gentile priests were converted to Judaism, together with many other people. Only with a few Jews in this city, who believed in the teaching of the Sadducees, it did not work as well as with the many gentiles who lived in this rather big city and who did business.

[5] After a few days, on a morning, while I was blessing also this city, we went to another one, more to the south, and we reached also that one close to the evening.

[6] Halfway, a few of My disciples were hungry and thirsty, for along this deserted way were only old, deserted wells and 2 also deserted inns that were inhabited by a few very poor shepherds who could offer us nothing else except some cheese and milk.

[7] There the disciples asked Me if I also would like to do a sign for them to strengthen their body.

[8] But I said: "I could do that if it would be strictly necessary, but if I can fast a little, why can you not do that? In the place that we will reach in a few hours we will have a lot of things to do, and it is better to arrive there soberly instead of somewhere else. In that place there will be a moderate strengthening for your body."

[9] The disciples were satisfied with that.

25. THE LORD IN THE POOR INN OF THE BASALT CITY



WHEN we peacefully continued our trip, reached the city 1 hour before sunset and were welcomed by a traditional Jew who possessed an inn. At once we received bread and some wine which the inhabitants of this city itself knew how to prepare from wine grapes that were wildly growing and which was also very suitable for drinking.

[2] **The innkeeper** saw that the wine was for a few disciples not very tasteful, and therefore he said: “My dear friends, I surely can see that our wine is not very tasteful to you, but I nevertheless cannot give you another *wine* than the one which is the produce of our meager region. We do not have the means to let better wine be brought to this place, and so we thank the Lord that He gave us such wine with which we can better lessen our thirst on hot days than the people in the big cities who only drink the best wine to please their pampered palate. We live here in this city that is far from Jerusalem, not in the manner of lustful gluttons, but in the manner of poor shepherds, and with that we are healthier and more satisfied than the rich in the big worldly cities who think for the whole day as to how they can guzzle more abundantly but do not have time to think about God and to give the honor only to Him. So drink our wine, it will really not harm you.”

[3] **When the disciples heard this from our innkeeper, they praised his faithfulness to God, ate then the barley bread with pleasure and drank the wine with great joy, which was of course a little sour.**

[4] **When we had quickly strengthened ourselves in this way, the innkeeper asked us if we were perhaps businessmen from some region, what we were trading and how long we planned to stay here for our business.**

[5] **I said: “Friend, we are indeed some kind of businessmen, but we are trading in some merchandise that you cannot see now with your eyes, and so you might think that I am joking to you, but this is not the case but it is exactly as I have told you.**

[6] **My merchandise is truly invisible, and yet it has the highest**

value for every human being who wants to accept it from Me with a faithful and pure heart and will.

[7] But so that you can see of what My invisible merchandise consists, you should now bring to Me that one son of yours who is blind and lame. Then I will make him seeing and *his limbs* straight in one moment.”

[8] When **the innkeeper** heard that from Me, he said: “Then You are a Savior, and making sick people healthy is Your invisible merchandise? Yes, if this is the case with You and Your companions You certainly will do good business here, for we are not lacking all kinds of sicknesses that cannot be cured by our doctors. I will immediately bring my blind and lame son here myself.”

[9] Then the innkeeper went, brought the son that was asked and put him before Me.

[10] When he was on a bed before Me, I asked him if he wanted to be seeing and be no more lame.

[11] **The son** said: “Master, if You can do that – which I do not doubt – then give me such mercy of Yours.

[12] **I** said: “Then I will that you become seeing and straight at this moment.”

[13] As soon as I had said that, the son was already seeing, and his whole body completely straight.

[14] And **the innkeeper**, hitting his hands on his chest, said: “No, this is not a normal way of healing. You must have done this by the Spirit of Jehovah, and You must therefore be a great prophet.”

[15] On this, the healed son, who was very well acquainted with the Scripture, and especially the prophets, said: “Father, as far as I know, the prophets, who also performed miracles from time to time, never said: ‘I will that this or that happens’, but always: ‘The Lord says, and it is His will that this or that happens, and it will take place if the people of Israel will not turn away from their sins’. But this Savior said: ‘I will that you become seeing and straight’, and look, in one moment I became seeing and straight in all my limbs of which the whole paralysis tormented me already

for several years and partly also since my youth.

[16] If this Savior can accomplish all that by the power of His word and will, He obviously must be more than a prophet.

[17] The miracle which He performed now makes me really think of the meaningful word of a prophet who said from the Spirit of Jehovah like this: ‘When the great Hero, the Lion of Judah, the King of Kings, the Lord of all the hosts will come into this world, the blind will see, the deaf will hear, the cripple will be made straight, and the lame will jump around like a deer, and all this He will accomplish by His power, and He will establish a Kingdom that will not end.’

[18] Well now, all this corresponds with the manner of doing and speaking of this miraculous Savior, and I think that I am not mistaken when I declare that in Him is hidden the so often promised Savior who is expected by all true Jews with fervent desire.

[19] Already His first words that He said to me when I was still blind and lame in my bed made me so excited that I could not doubt anymore that He would heal me, and so I also do not doubt that He is the promised One. And since He came to us, a great salvation came to our house, and with that also to this whole place. The future will tell if I was wrong *or not*.”

[20] **The innkeeper, the father of the healed one, said:** “My son, you could be very right, for this idea came also in me. But let us not come to a conclusion too soon, for this good miraculous Savior will surely not withhold to truthfully tell us more about Himself.”

[21] **I said:** “I also will do that, and then you will greatly rejoice about that. But now, innkeeper, go and look into your storeroom to see if you still have a few fishes in reserve. You should let them be prepared in your manner and put them before us on the table, and you and your son will also satiate yourselves with them.”

[22] **When the innkeeper heard My desire, he became very sad and said:** “O wonderful Savior, we already were without *fish* for a long time, for from here to the Lake of Galilee is too far, as well as to the river Jordan, and not less to the Euphrates. Our 2 little

brooks – we gather their water in a pond for our house animals – are not suitable to keep fish, and so, honestly speaking, we have not even one fish in this city.

[23] In former times, a few very big ponds with sweet water and abundant fish must have existed near this city. But as a result of frequent earthquakes, with which this region is hit every year, those ponds have lost their water, and with that also their fishes, and that is why we have no fish in the whole wide environment, and so I will not be able to comply with Your desire.”

[24] **I said:** “But in the big inner court of your house you have a well that contains sweet water, and next to it a rather big pond that is cut out in rocky ground and that keeps the water well. Why do you not cultivate fish therein?”

[25] **The innkeeper said:** “That You know about everything in my housekeeping I concluded from the fact that when You came into my house You immediately knew about the sickness of my son. And so this is also the case with the well and the pond of stone which is indeed capable to contain a large quantity of fish. But from where should I bring the fishes to put them in the pond? In all directions it is too far to bring living and completely healthy, fresh fish to this place and put them in the pond to further cultivate them. So since this would clearly be a useless effort, my pond remained the whole time without fish, and so for understandable reasons also my storeroom.”

[26] **I said:** “If you can believe, then go and look in your storeroom anyway. Then there certainly will be so many fishes that are already slaughtered and cleaned that there will be sufficient for tonight. And from now on your pond will always have a good quantity of noble fishes.”

[27] On this, the innkeeper was very surprised, and he went to see about the fishes.

26. THE FISH MIRACLE



WHEN he came into the storeroom with his wife and a few of his other children, he found to his great amazement a whole basket of already completely cleaned fishes of the best and noblest kind, and so he ordered his wife and his children, who were very skilled in the kitchen, to prepare these fishes in the best way.

[2] But his wife did not know what to think of this miracle.

[3] And **the innkeeper** said: “Do not think about this too much now, because the man of God who was able to make my son healthy again by His word and His will, while all the doctors declared him incurable for already a long time, could also miraculously have put these fishes into our storeroom. Go you all to work now and see to it that it is quickly prepared. You will hear about all the rest later.”

[4] Then the wife and the children went to work to prepare the fishes, and the innkeeper came in full gratitude back to us.

[5] And **I** said to him: “Now, how about the fishes?”

[6] **The innkeeper** said: “Miraculous Master, everything is completely in order, but I suppose that these fishes did not come from any water of this Earth but were created by You. I can see now that my son, who was healed by You, was fully right when he stated that You are the great promised One. So You are, what Your inner Being is concerned, not the servant of someone who is higher than You, but You are equal to the Highest One, a Lord Yourself who has no equal on this Earth nor in the Heavens.

[7] You are, for what concerns Your Spirit, one and the same Being with God. That You walk now among us as a human being, must also be only Your will, because nothing can be impossible to You.

[8] It is true that it is written in Moses that no one can see God and live at the same time, but this statement must certainly have another explanation because father Abraham saw and spoke to God and did not lose his life by that, and so also father Jacob and

still many others whom we know from the Scripture and they lived. Even Moses saw the back of Jehovah and kept his life, and we see You now and are keeping also our life.

[9] I am *of the opinion* that man can at no time see God in His endless and eternal initial existence and keep his life, for that which is finite can never understand the infinite with any sense organ and can also never measure eternity. Am I as a traditional Jew right in this or not?"

[10] **I** said: "Your opinion is completely correct and true, even though the eternal life was also faithfully and truthfully promised to every person who would act and live according to the commandments of God.

[11] Look, as long as man lives on this Earth within time and space, he never can grasp or understand the eternity or infinity of the spirit, not with his reason and certainly not with any other physical sense organ, but when the Spirit of God, which is pure Love, will completely penetrate the purified soul of man and will in this way thoroughly enlighten the actual human being which is the soul, and will be awakened to life with eternal life, then he becomes one with God and will then also penetrate in the endless and eternal depths of God and he will be able to understand them. And this is how it should be understood when it is stated that a perfect human being will, in his spirit, see God from face to face.

[12] But we will not talk about this now, for there are already the prepared fishes with which we want to and will strengthen our body."

[13] I hardly had said that when the wife of the innkeeper and his other children brought on several platters the really well prepared fishes inside. Then the children put down very skillfully, according to the custom in this place, a little platter of pottery, wooden forks and bony knives before every guest. Each one of us took a fish, also the innkeeper and his healed son, and so the fishes were quickly eaten and everyone was completely satiated with the warm food.

[14] When everyone had eaten as many fishes as he could eat,

there were still several left on the big platters, and the innkeeper asked Me if he had to keep these fishes for tomorrow.

[15] **But I** said: “Those who prepared these fishes should also eat them completely, for every worker is also worth of his salary. So call your wife and your other children and let them clear the table, and tell them that they should eat in the kitchen what is left over.”

[16] The innkeeper did this, and the table was cleared.

27. THE LADY INNKEEPER AND HER SERVANTS



WHEN the wife and the other children had done that and also heard that they should eat the leftover fishes in the kitchen, they were very glad because they were all very hungry.

[2] When they ate the fishes, a few servants and maidservants came into the kitchen to receive and eat their evening bread. These were at once very surprised and asked the lady innkeeper from where she had received those fishes in this region.

[3] **The lady innkeeper** said: “Strangers have arrived and they themselves provided these fishes. I cannot tell you more. But take your evening bread, and since there are still enough fishes, I will also give each one of you some of these fishes for your loyal service.”

[4] The lady innkeeper did so, and each one of the 20 house servants, composed of helpers and maidservants, received so many that they barely could finish it.

[5] They hardly could stop being surprised, and they said (**the house servants**): “A special blessing from Jehovah must rest upon it, for you only gave us little pieces of fish with the bread, lady innkeeper, but the pieces of fish seemed to grow bigger all the time and we hardly could finish it, although it was so tasteful to us.”

[6] **The lady innkeeper** said: “Then always remain loyal to the house with all discipline and devotion, then the blessing of Jehovah will always remain with us in all things.”

[7] After this good remark of the lady innkeeper, the male and

female house servants left the kitchen and went to rest because they all worked hard that day and had become tired.

[8] Then the lady innkeeper came to our room and related to us about the miraculous multiplication of the pieces of fish which she divided among the personnel for their zeal.

[9] **The innkeeper said:** “Listen, my ever pious and godly dedicated wife, for the One who is almighty, nothing is impossible, but we men can only always admire, glorify, love and praise the Almighty One and keep His commandments. God can do everything out of Himself, but a human being and also an angel *can do* nothing without God.

[10] Look, since our house has always believed in God, and kept, as much as possible, the old faithfulness in heart and deed among the many gentiles, He remembered us, came visibly to us in this Savior in a miraculous way and greatly refreshed our souls. So let us stay as we were and always act righteously according to God’s commandments that we know, then He will remain from now on with us with His mercy, love, mildness and compassion.”

[11] **On this, I said:** “You still are a real Jew *like* from the old time of Samuel and you are therefore also enlightened as a Jew should be. Nevertheless, you have a little fault, and this consists in the fact that you are closed and unfriendly to strangers who are no Jews. You are secretly an enemy of the gentiles, and this so much so that you would like to destroy them all if this would be possible to you.

[12] I know that you are like that because of your true zeal for a truth from God and because this was also the case with the old, true Jews, of whom was demanded to draw the sword against the enemies of God’s people. But this should no more be the way now, and also to all the gentiles My gospel should be preached that consists of the establishment of the Kingdom of God on this Earth to make all people blissful. For there will be times, and they are already there, that a lot of gentiles will stand much closer to God than a lot of Jews who glorify and praise God with their lips but whose hearts are far away from Him.

[13] Look, a lot of gentiles are searching now for the truth which

the true children of God formerly possessed from Adam up to this time, and when they find that truth, they immediately recognize it, accept it with a very willing heart and come fully to a living faith. And it is also My will, says the Lord, that also the gentiles – who languished so long without their fault in the deepest darkness of the very foolish superstition among the tyrants and their imperious priests with their craving for a good life – will be blessed by the faith in the one, only true God.

28. THE LOVE FOR PEOPLE OF ANOTHER BELIEF



LOOK, when I came into this world almost 33 years ago in a sheep's stable in Bethlehem, born from a very pure and pious virgin – with the name of Maria who was the only daughter of Joachim and the old Anna who at the time of the pious Simeon were always busy in the temple – it were gentiles who were the first that saw from afar that in Me something extraordinary had come into this world. They brought all kinds of offerings to Me – gold, incense and myrrh – and the most powerful commanders of Rome in Judea and over all the Roman lands in Asia and also Africa showed Me great love and gave Me every favor, especially during that sad occasion when the old Herod heard that in Me a very powerful King of the Jews was born and he wanted to let kill all male children up to 12 years¹. My earthly mother and My stepfather Joseph and his 5 sons, whom he received from a former marriage, had to flee to Egypt with Me, and the Roman commander Cornelius and his brother Cyrenius showed Me much love during that flight and took care of a good accommodation in a strange country.

[2] And look, this is what the gentiles, who are so much hated by the Jews, did for Me, while the Jews, that means the mighty ones, wanted to kill Me from fear that, at the time that I would

¹ See 'The Childhood of Jesus', chapter 33:3; 17; 24-25. Herod's initial plan was to kill all children up to 12 years, but Cornelius knew how to dissuade him from it. However, the children up to 2 years could not be spared (chapter 41:2).

grow up, they could lose their throne from Me which they leased from Rome.

[3] Now, if this is the case, then it is also completely correct that I, as well as every true Jew, should show the same love to the gentiles as they have shown Me already from My childhood. And the last 2 ½ years I always experienced far and wide during My trips as a Teacher, more faith and love from the gentiles than from the Jews who take Me for a false prophet, deceiver, agitator of the people and a magician who has an alliance with Satan, and they also assert to the people that this is what I am. And the more the simple Jews believe in Me, the more they want to kill Me.

[4] But I say to you that also for this reason the light of the eternal truth of the Jews will be taken away and given to the gentiles. The Jews will be scattered over the whole world and will never more possess an own country but will have to bear all slander and persecution as hated slaves among the kings of the gentile nations as a permanent testimony of their unbelief and their total lovelessness. They will always wait for the promised Messiah, but in vain, for that Messiah am I and furthermore no one anymore throughout eternity.

[5] Therefore, you also should completely change your old attitude regarding the gentiles, then they will become your friends and will easily accept your true belief, because most of them do not believe anymore in their gods anyway but adhere to the teachings of their worldly sages and are by that very clever philosophers and speakers, and through them you will learn a lot of what you hardly will expect to find with them.

[6] People who are clever and discerning in worldly things, will also quickly and easily be the same in what concerns the spirit and its deep wisdom and philosophy of life. It only depends on how you treat them.

[7] The one who immediately will chop into them with the sword and the clubs of the old hate will certainly do bad business with them, but the one who will meet them with all meekness and love, will soon be carried on their hands and be shown all love in return.

[8] Look, this was your fault up to now which you should lay off in the future if you want to become a perfect Jew and perfected man just like Me.

[9] Does God not let His sun shine over the gentiles as well as over the Jews, which you certainly must have noticed every day? But if God, the Lord over all things in the world and in the Heavens, makes no difference, then also a true Jew should try to become completely equal to God, his eternal Father.

[10] However, you should not help them in the construction of for instance an idol temple, for this would not be true neighborly love and would be worthless to Me, but freeing the gentiles from all their old errors and giving them the old light of the truth is what is really very worthy to Me.

[11] It is the same when a poor gentile comes at your door to ask for alms but you do not give to him because he is a gentile, then to Me you have done nothing worthy for the eternal life. However, if you also take care of a poor, hungry and thirsty gentile and give him what he needs, then to Me you have done a very pleasing work of neighborly love, and I will repay you already here a hundredfold and later in the beyond eternallyfold¹, because true neighborly love in the heart of man – whether he is a Jew or gentile – is the only true spiritual element of life by which the whole sensorial world and all Heavens are kept in their order of existence. If man possesses and practices true neighborly love, he will live by that in the right order of God and will establish in himself the eternal life of his soul.

[12] So have from now on true neighborly love, for gentiles as well as for Jews, then by the power of My Spirit you will be awakened to eternal life and you will penetrate into the depths of My divinity. By that you will also truly love your God above all in Me. And this is all what I want from people in order to gain eternal life. The one who possesses that love is to Me without sin and does not have to pray those long, empty and to Me completely worthless

¹ Although this word does not exist in English, this is the literal translation and shows a better meaning.

prayers of the Jews, will not have to fast nor do penance in sack and ashes. Did you well understand that?"

29. ALLOWING ABUSES AND DEGENERATION AMONG THE PEOPLE



HE innkeeper said: “O Lord and Master, I understood You completely, and it is totally clear to me now who the One is in You who is standing before me. My son, who has been healed by Your mercy and power, came directly after *his healing* to the right conclusion about You and recognized You as the One whom You also doubtlessly must be.

[2] From now on I will entirely lay off my old fault and will adjust my attitude towards Jews and gentiles precisely according to Your holy true advise.

[3] But for people like us, one thing is difficult to understand, namely why on this Earth the completely good and true must often be completely suppressed and subdued to the evil and false, and becomes only visible again, but only sporadically, when the evil and false itself puts – by necessity and out of despair – the sharp sword at the chest.

[4] How many thousand times thousands of people, who are languishing in the greatest need, darkness and multiple desperation, are not able to help themselves and sigh throughout their whole life. We, the few people who are still standing in the initial truth can only feel deep compassion for them but cannot help them, even with the best of will. Yes, someone who hungers we can satiate with our small surplus, someone who thirst we can give to drink and give clothes to someone who is naked, and also when it is necessary, someone who is sad, we can give some meager comfort, but with that, all our help is at its end.

[5] Only You, o Lord and Master, who knows all too well the need of all people on this Earth, can relieve the whole spiritual and also physical need of all people just as quickly as You relieved my son from all his suffering, but this is done only very seldom by You, as

the Scripture itself teaches us.

[6] O Lord and Master, why actually must it be like that on this Earth? Are most people then really destined by You to fall and only a few for the resurrection?"

[7] **I** said: "Far from it. Not one human being is destined by Me to fall, but every human being will really be only a human being by his free will that is given to him by Me, and he needs to exercise *himself*, try *himself* and decide for himself as to what is good and true which I always faithfully revealed to him. But then it happens that people let themselves be captured all too soon by the enticements of the world in which – in a hidden manner – rules the kingdom of Satan. They gradually forget Me, despite My continual warnings, ignore My commandments and finally trample them down. They change neighborly love into all selfishness, become lazy in all good works, and in this laziness they begin to think how they can manage to let all the other people work for them and let them blindly obey.

[8] With these kind of thoughts they all too soon fall into various deceitful arts, committing them against their curious fellowmen and they very soon present themselves, through all kinds of false magic wonders and mysterious words, as prophets who are inspired by God.


[9] The other people begin then to believe those loafers and think they are some sort of higher beings. They feel happy when they regularly can be with them and *when they can* bring them all kinds of offerings, and they finally ask the deceivers to put them under their protection.

[10] And look, under such circumstances those deceivers have already reached their goal. They become more and more powerful by their laziness and their deceitful arts, turn around My revelations to their advantage, become rulers over their blinded fellowmen and give them laws according to which mankind should finally only work for them, and if necessary also dedicate and offer all their possessions, blood and life to their tyrants.

[11] Always when this happens, the people are admonished and

warned by Me by means of prophets that are truly awakened in the spirit by Me, as at the time of Samuel when the Jewish people also wanted to have a king like the surrounding pagan nations.

30. THE CAUSE OF THE ILLNESS OF THE INNKEEPER'S SON

EAD Samuel and the Book of the Judges, then you will see how much I very clearly and explicitly warned the Jewish people against *having* a king. But what was the final result of all My many warning? I say to you: nothing at all. The people just wanted to have a king, and so they also received one as a just punishment for their incorrigible stubbornness.

[2] Could you blame Me for not wanting to help the people and preferred to let them go down? You surely will realize now that this was and never could be the case with Me, for to those who want it to happen, no injustice is committed to them, and when someone pays no attention to My many admonitions and he gives in to the lusts of the world and its flesh, I truly cannot do anything about it when he goes to ruin, as well as his fellowmen when they follow his example.

[3] Am I personally not in this world now Myself, teaching the blind people and performing signs which no one can do except Me? But go to Jerusalem and many other cities, in Judea as well as in Galilee, and ask the prominent Jews what they think of Me.

[4] Look, they want to catch and kill Me because I show them their many and very severe and big sins. They do not want to give up their worldly mentality, neither their worldly honor nor their unlimited good life.

[5] Tell Me, is it My fault that those prominent Jews are incorrigible? You are of course of the opinion that I could let them perish and destroy in one moment. I could do that, but also the apostates are My children, and My love is patient with them and waits constantly to see whether finally one or the other would not come back to Me.

[6] So you will realize now that I, as the highest love and patience, am not doing that, so that finally, when the great judgment will come over the people, no one could make excuses, saying that I showed too little love and patience to him.

[7] I say to you: if Jerusalem will persist in its evilness and will therein increase instead of decrease, then counted from now on, not fully 50 years will pass before it and the whole land will fare much worse than formerly Sodom and Gomorrah.”

[8] **The innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, now I very clearly perceive that only You are highly wise and are right in everything. The people are always to blame for all the afflictions from which they are suffering in body and soul.

[9] But whose fault was it actually that this son of mine, who always had been my most recommendable and most pious son since his earliest youth, became blind and lame?”

[10] **I** said: “Look, friend, 3 circumstances that came together contributed to it. The 1st circumstance was that you had a too great preference for him. Whenever he was threatened by even a little headache, immediately all known doctors had to come to him to cure him. These have with their very strong means driven a rather heavy head catarrh¹ in his eyes and the son became blind.

[11] 2nd circumstance: when your son became blind the doctors wanted to make him seeing again, used internally and externally strong, but completely wrong means by which your son became soon lame over his whole body.

[12] 3rd circumstance: I knew this and permitted that it would come over you. And this for the *following* reasons: Firstly you then showed a greater love to your other children. Secondly you realized that a true Jew should, also during physical afflictions, always put *his trust* more in God than in the mostly blind and ignorant worldly doctors, for when no doctor can help, God alone can still very well help. And thirdly, I also permitted it because I well knew that I would come to you to give you a sign by healing

¹ Inflammation of a human membrane affecting the nose and air passages.

your son, showing that I am the Lord and that nothing is impossible to Me.

[13] By that you will realize for what fault your son became blind and lame for a time.

[14] But there is still a secret, inner, spiritual reason which you still cannot understand now but which will become clear to you in the other life. However, you and your son may hear now from My mouth that neither you yourself nor your son originate – as far as your souls are concerned – from this Earth but from above, that means from another one in the endless wide space of Heaven. Because everything that shows itself at the wide and deep Heaven as fixed stars, is one celestial body after another, and not one of them is without human beings, looking like all of you and *gifted* with reason. However, only this Earth carries My children.

[15] But do not ask any further about this. When you will be perfected in the spirit, your inner sight will also therein give you a greater clearness.”

31. THE 2 STRANGERS FROM NINEVEH



WHEN I had said that to the innkeeper, who was more and more surprised, he still wanted to say something, but at that moment 2 strangers came at the door of the inn.

They knocked and wanted to be allowed to come in.

[2] The innkeeper asked Me immediately what he had to do.

[3] **I** said: “Ask your heart for the basic principles of true neighborly love, then it will tell you immediately what you should do.”

[4] The innkeeper thought at once of what I told him in My long speech and what his old fault was. He instantly stood up from the table and let the 2 strangers come into the inn.

[5] When both came to us in the room, the innkeeper asked them from where they came and what they wanted.

[6] **One of the 2**, who could speak some bad Hebrew, said: “O friend, we come from very far. Maybe you know where formerly

the very big and mighty Nineveh stood. And we live 2 long day trips behind that known city in a more than miserable condition.

[7] We owed our tyrant of a king a few silver coins at very brutally imposed taxes, and we could nowhere gather that amount within the given time limit of only 7 days. We asked for mercy and patience, but all in vain. They answered us that if one person would be given that mercy, then at the time that the taxes must be paid, soon all the people would come before the throne of the king to beg for mercy. Therefore no mercy. And they directly grabbed everything we possessed and they also did not spare our women and children and put them in captivity. After a lot of begging they finally gave us a time limit of 3 months to go and beg in order to gather the demanded silver coins and bring them to the cashbox of the king. If we could not do that, our women and children would be sold to Indian slave traders and we would be forbidden to enter the country.

[8] Look, happy citizen of the wise rulers of Rome, this is how it goes under *the rule* of our tyrant, who besides himself and his royal household considers no one as a human being. And we have undertaken this far trip to ask you, who are certainly better fellowmen, for our silver coins, so that we can return to our country again without problems and free our women and children from the hard captivity. With this you know, happy innkeeper, now completely from where we came and what we wish and what we are looking for.”

[9] **The innkeeper said:** “If you have no further request you can soon be helped out of your need. But now there is still one question, namely if you are hungry and thirsty?”

[10] **The one person said:** “Both at the same time, for we came today from the region of the Euphrates and did not obtain any food or drink on our way. Around noon we emptied our water flasks that we filled very early in the morning with water from the Euphrates, and since then we were no more able to spot water anywhere.”

[11] **The innkeeper felt very sorry for the 2 strangers, stood quickly**

up, brought them salt, bread and wine and told the strangers that they could sit at a table at once and strengthen them with bread and wine.

[12] Looking gratefully to the sky, the 2 reached immediately for the bread and also for the wine, and they quenched their thirst and strengthened themselves.

[13] And the innkeeper asked Me which religion they were actually confessing.

[14] **I** said to him: “Friend, at this moment it is still not the time for these 2 men that I should talk to them. So you only talk to them. I will come into *the conversation* later.”

32. THE RELIGIOUS SITUATION IN THE COUNTRY OF THE 2 STRANGERS



WHEN the 2 had eaten their fill, the innkeeper asked them what kind of gods were honored and worshipped in their country.

[2] **The one person** said: “O dear friend, there is really not one specific deity, because our priests are continuously living in conflict among each other, and almost everyone of them has his own god, letting it perform wonders and shouting only about the power and glory of his god. But the king does not care much, because his gods are gold, silver and precious stones. All the other gods do not interest him.

[3] However, both of us still belong to the Jewish tribe, which established itself here and there in our country since the captivity under king Nebuchadnezzar, and therefore we are secretly followers of Moses, but of course without Scripture, without Ark of Covenant and without temple. The sky with its stars is all we have.

[4] We believe in the God whom Moses showed to our fathers, and we still keep the Sabbath and the other commandments, but the ancient Jehovah does not particularly seem to remember us anymore.

[5] **The innkeeper said:** “I also am a Jew, and I can assure you that the ancient Jehovah has very much remembered you, because in your need He led you to this place. It will become almost completely clear to you tomorrow. But today you can rest and strengthen you further with bread and wine.

The former chapters in March 1863 were still written in Lorber's own handwriting. After that, came an interruption of about 1 year. It was only on April 11, 1864 that his annotations were continued. Since Lorber was bedridden for 3 months during his last sickness (gout with dropsy), he could not write down anymore himself what he heard and had to dictate it to someone else.

[6] The innkeeper reassured the 2 strangers, because besides more bread and wine to strengthen themselves, he also gave them the assurance that they would be taken care of in all respects the next morning. He then came back to our table and could not find the words to express his great amazement about what he heard from the 2 strangers about the priests and the king of their country.

[7] **But I said:** “Let it be so, for also among the Greeks, Romans and Jews in this time it is not any better. Also with them, the gods serve no other purpose than to blind the people through them as much as possible with the help of all kinds of magic, and to stir them on to make greater offerings. Although they do not have a *ius gladii*¹ and no *ius potioris et fortioris*², but the present rulers over the people like to see when the priests make the people really blind and superstitious, so that they – namely the kings – can force the people more easily to obedience and would not need a great number of expensive soldiers to do this.

[8] A ruler over the people is very little or not at all interested in whom God actually is. Although, now and then he outwardly plays along with the prescribed ceremonies to make the people believe how highly he worships their gods himself, but he himself stays, for what concerns his worldly life, an epicure, and for what concerns his faith a cynic or Sadducee who does not believe in the continuance of life of the soul after death. And as the ruler thinks

¹ Latin for: the right of the sword – the right to decide over life and death.

² Latin for: the right of the powerful – the privileged one and the strong one.

within himself, so are also thinking the high priests.

[9] If he wants to start a war against some neighboring country, then the high priests know what they have to do to influence his people beforehand by the lower priests, *saying* that the coming war is the will of the gods and that the king, as representative of his people before the gods, cannot avoid to zealously follow their will that was announced to the high priests.

[10] Through this, the people are intimidated, so that they willingly and zealously pay the extra war taxes which the king needs, and they consider it as a great honor – if they are still strong – to join the war with the weapons in their hand.

[11] Look, my dear innkeeper, this not only happens in the country from where our 2 strangers came in their great need, but on the whole Earth. And a very long time will be needed before the peoples will realize that – since the time of Moses and the judges who came after him – they were, are and still will be for a long time, the human pack animals of the great and mighty ones.

33. GOD'S JUDGMENTS AND ITS CONSEQUENCES



Of course now you think – as a few in My presence are thinking – that I have the power to make for all times an end to this kind of worldly mischief. You are of course right in this, but then firstly, the free will of man – who is, without distinction of birth or class, called to become a child of God – should be entirely taken away, and instead of his free reason and mind the human soul should be endowed with an instinct, just like the soul of animals, after which every human being would only be capable of doing what his instinct would drive him to do. And secondly I will have to make the whole Earth entirely different and let only the feed grow for such instinctive human beings, just like for the other animals. Moreover, I thirdly will have to let die out a lot of plants and animal species, for they only exist by necessity so that out of these the completely free human soul would develop in an almost endless series of stages.

[2] So you can understand – since you are a strict follower of Moses – that it cannot be different on this Earth. And if things were better than now, then surely it would not be necessary for Me to come Myself as a human being on this Earth to make the old faith alive again – at least for those who still kept the better attitude of the prophets of former times – and through them to convince also the other people that the scriptures and predictions of the prophets were not invented like the scriptures and predictions of the teachers of false gods.

[3] However, the whole human race on this Earth will still need more than 2.000 years to turn to a purer light.

[4] You know that after the flood of Noah the few people, who were left over, walked for a rather long time on a better way of light. But they were again soon attracted by the world and its matter wherein the actual Satan is. And already during the time of Abraham the godlessness of the people was considerably advanced. Count all those judgments with which I very painfully and sharply visited such nations.

[5] How long were such judgments effective? Generally 3 to 4 generations at the most. And after that it was like before, and even much worse. A Sodom and Gomorrah, a Babylon and a Nineveh could now almost be considered as a paradise compared to Jerusalem, compared to many other cities of the former Promised Land and also compared to many cities of the pagans.

[6] Also over all these cities will soon come one judgment after another, but their effect will be the same as with the former judgments. Many people will better their lives for a certain time, will repent and do penance, but when they will feel, earthly speaking, to be in an excellent situation, then soon laziness will come up again with them, and the smart ones will let themselves be served by the less smart ones for all kinds of false rewards.

[7] And once people will have reached that point, the darkening of their mind will start again among them. The sun of life will go down, and the full night will come up in triumph at the opposite side, and then once more it will take a long time before it will

dawn again.

[8] And now you can, My dear innkeeper and friend, be satisfied for yourself and your whole house with what I have told you now about men's present condition.

[9] At some good opportunity you also can tell it to your trustworthy friends, and exhort them to be patient and to persevere in My name. And you also can assure them of My love and mercy, and that soon things will become lighter and better among many Jews as well as among the gentiles."

34. THE RESULT OF THE SPREADING OF THE GOSPEL. THE RETURN OF THE LORD.



ITH this My explanation the innkeeper was completely satisfied, and he agreed.

[2] But a few of those who were present, especially **John's disciples** said: "Lord, if it always will be like since the time of Noah up till now, then the Earth is a breeding school for Hell instead of for Heaven. For what will be the use of proclaiming the gospel to the nations to convert them from their old darkness to Your light of life to real penance or turnaround if undoubtedly Satan will immediately afterwards continue his old game again?

[3] Because apart from us who are Your true disciples, a lot of false teachers and prophets will all too soon arise and represent You as they like, and the people will let them be deceived by them through all kinds of deceitful arts and wonders of magic, just like at all times, in such a way that we, Your true disciples, will with and among them not be safe with our life.

[4] What will Your present coming down benefit the people in general? A few will believe in Your name in fear and trembling and will also secretly act and live according to Your teaching, but woe to them in this world when they will be recognized as such by the others. Then there will probably be no end to persecution until the small number of those who really confess You will be wiped off from this Earth.

[5] If the Israelites could make a golden calf in Your presence, honoring and praising it, then how much more will the present completely hard people and sinners of all kind do that? Lord, are we right or not?”

[6] **I** said: “On the one hand yes, but on the other hand not, for from now on until the end of times I will know how to protect and keep those who really confess Me, so that the power of Satan will do them little or no harm at all.

[7] But take care that after Me you will not disagree among each other because I also have to leave your free will and your free understanding. If you will disagree, and the one recommends this and the other that as being better, then you will put the first foundation stone yourselves for the false works of the prophets, and it will bring about multiple divisions in the teaching that I have proclaimed to you.”

[8] Now **the disciples** said again: “Lord, this will, as far as we are concerned, never happen, since we are witnesses of Your teaching and Your deeds.”

[9] **I** said: “That is what you are, nevertheless, counted from now on, not 1 year will pass before you will take offence at Me, will deny and betray Me. Truly I say to you furthermore: when I as Your Shepherd will soon be beaten, you will be scattered as My sheep. I will gather you again after My resurrection and will, providing you with everything, send you into the world to proclaim My gospel to all people about the coming of God’s Kingdom on this Earth. And you will have many adherents, and out of these adherents will soon arise followers who will follow your steps and will also teach in My name.

[10] Those who are called will not spoil anything, but besides those who are called, the many who are not called all the more, and then soon there will be quarrels and disputes among them, and each one of them will make it appear as if he speaks the full, pure truth. My teaching will soon become like a bait that the vultures will smell already from afar, to which they will fly and eat it up to the bones to satiate their body.

[11] The carcass will remain, but only few, who are wise by My Spirit, will recognize how the flesh, with which the bones were formerly covered, had truthfully looked like. But most of them will still gnaw at the carcass till they will starve.

[12] Then there will of course be many quarrels and gnashing of teeth on the Earth, and the people who were so long in darkness will in their night run after the unclear false lights, thinking that they will receive by that a real light, but the repeated extinguishing of such false lights will gradually make them realize that they were deceived.

[13] And look, then I will come back as a clear flash of lightning that will spread from the east to the west and will enlighten everything in, on and above the Earth. And then the time will come that the false teachers and prophets will achieve nothing anymore with the people who are enlightened by the flash of lightning.”

35. THE QUESTION ABOUT THE RESURRECTION OF THE FAITHFULL ON THE YOUNGEST DAY



IN this, **Simon Judah**, who was also called Peter, said: “Lord, You told us several times that only the one who truly believes in You and will live and act according to Your teaching will receive eternal life, and that You will waken him up on the youngest day. Look, Lord, these are 2 promises from Your mouth which are still not quite clear to me despite Your multiple explanations.

[2] What will be the fate of those numerous people who still by far will not hear or know anything about You? Are they only on the Earth to fertilize with their bodies the vast surface of this Earth for a possible better human race?

[3] Because those people can obviously not receive an awakening by You on a youngest day, since they – without their fault – can impossibly believe in You and live according to Your teaching. And a youngest day is always something hard and mysterious in Your teaching, despite the many explanations that You partly gave

about it. For at one time it seems to be a general day that will happen some time, and another time a special day for every person who will pass over to the great world in the beyond.

[4] But no matter how, I still do not understand why once more an awakening is necessary for those who are already living in Your name anyway.

[5] An awakening seems a necessity to me for those who are really dead, but once they are awakened, when and for what do they have to become more dead than before? Or will Your gospel only be preached to them after the awakening?

[6] Look, o Lord, give us now finally a complete explanation about this, so that we not always have to secretly think that out of 1.000 human beings that You have created, only 1 was created for eternal life and 999 for eternal death.”

[7] On this, I said: “Listen, My Simon Judah, it seems that on this point, about which you constantly doubt, you will never be able to have a clear understanding, even when being in full possession of My Spirit. I told you already several times that I still have many things to tell you, but that you cannot bear them yet – that means to perceive and understand them with your reason. That is why I will send you My Spirit and will pour it out over you all, and only that will guide you into all truth and wisdom.

[8] I only have to reach a little higher with My teaching, and you say: ‘Now You have opened Your mouth in parables and images again’, and since you are not capable to understand My teaching, you call it hard, *saying*: ‘Who can grasp and perceive it?’

[9] Do you not know that in relation to My teaching you are still like little children under age who are fed with milk because they still cannot take and digest any hard and strong food.


[10] When after Me you will go out to spread My gospel among the people, then you will do the same to them as what I am doing now to you and to other people that we meet.

[11] Or what would you think when in a school for children a very wise scribe would come and give speeches about the most secret parts of the text of the prophets to his young and weak listeners –

which of course would not be understood by any of the listeners? Would the very wise scribe finally not have to hear the listeners shouting: ‘Highly learned and wise friend, teach us first how to read, *and* if necessary to write and to count, and see only then whether we are capable to understand anything of your high wisdom’?

[12] And look, such rebuke I finally would have to hear from you if I would represent My gospel in the pure Heavenly light. For if you already do not understand the things of this world that in case of necessity you can touch with your hands, then how would you understand anything if I would speak to you about things that are entirely from the beyond and Heavenly?

36. THE LORD EXPLAINS HIS MERCY

HAT which you, My Simon Judah, have just asked Me, belongs for the greatest part to the beyond, and despite My multiple explanations you cannot thoroughly understand it, and you are secretly accusing Me of a certain unjust and tyrannical cruelty. That is not very nice of you, and this all the less since you know now who I am, and that it was not out of anger or vengeance that I assumed a body from your earthly flesh to personally and profoundly reveal Myself to you in all My greatness without making use of the mouth of some prophet to make My will known to you people.

[2] Do you not believe that I know much better the number of people on Earth who were not able to hear anything about Me, who are not able to hear and will still not hear about Me for a long time? Why should I judge and condemn them if without their fault they cannot believe in Me, while I, even among the many Jews who heard Me and saw My actions, never judged or condemned anyone, except a few for what their body is concerned who wanted to grab and kill us with brutal haste and eagerness? Then why should I judge and condemn those who are ignorant and innocent?

[3] There is not one nation on the whole Earth – because they

originate from Adam – that since the first times does not possess a remainder of the teaching that was revealed to the patriarchs about the one and true God. It is known that later the priests and worldly rulers have, only out of self-interest, greatly concealed this one and true God and put in His place all kinds of idols in which the people believed and to which they also made offerings.

[4] And look, if the people would live and act conscientiously according to those different teachings, then to Me they would have no or little sin. It is true that they live in the darkness of all kinds of errors, but when their souls will come in the beyond and will receive My light about everything, they will be in the same position as someone here who has to go somewhere at night and stumbles against all kinds of objects along his way, whom he at one time takes for people, for animals or for something else, but not for what they really were and still are.

[5] But when we let this nightly walker go along that same road in clear daylight, then he will certainly see those things, which seemed to him like strange appearances at night, for what they really are and it will be impossible for him to take them for something else. He finally will laugh about himself because he was so stupid to take a tree stump for possible a street robber, and a stone laying on the road for a hyena.

[6] From this you can easily see that such souls in that great world of the beyond will find their way much sooner and easier in My light of life than those souls who truthfully heard about Me and can easily see and understand that I am the Light, the Life and the Truth but whose worldly attitude and evil will does not allow them.

[7] If we let them go to the beyond they will flee and despise even more the light of life and truth over there, which they already despised here so much.

[8] So am I wrong when I say: ‘I will also awaken these spiritual dead ones when they will step out of the flesh of this world and I will judge them and will let them find the reward for their deeds’?


[9] I certainly will not judge them Myself, but the eternal truth,

which is also in them but against which they are greatly hostile, will judge them and will let them flee from My face. Can I be blamed in any way for that?

[10] Do even the wise laws of Rome not say: ‘Volenti non fit iniuria¹’? Or should I perhaps, out of some kind of love for My adversaries, dispose of My eternal light of life and truth and put on the garment of lie and deceit? Hopefully no one of you would want that. But even for such souls who reject themselves, I have told you 2 comforting things: one time in the parable of the lost son and later, on a similar controversial matter like now, when I told you that in the house of My Father are a lot of habitations – but in order to express Myself here more clearly: a lot of schools for education and correction, where even the most rejected human devils from this world can be converted and improved.

[11] I think, Simon Judah, that from this you will quite clearly be able to see how you should understand what I told you already so many times.

37. THE NOTION OF ETERNITY

 HE fact that I never talked to you about a general day of awakening and judgment, you will all remember – but I spoke to you about a special youngest day for every person, beginning the moment his soul leaves his physical, earthly cover of testing. However, not for everyone will that awakening immediately result in receiving eternal life or reversely eternal death, and the remark has to be made that you should not consider the word ‘eternal’ as an endless time that continues. Likewise, the infinity of My space of creation is not only related to that space which has no beginning or end anywhere, just like God Himself from whom that space proceeds and which is filled in all directions of the works of His love and wisdom and the power of His will.

[2] Eternity in the spiritual world corresponds to the period of time

¹ Latin for: To the one who wants it, no injustice is done.

in the material worlds. Thus in the beyond, in the spirit, it¹ is what we call here time. But with this, it is absolutely not said that there will be no change in it, but it is only indicated that truth and life are forever and unchangeably the same. That which is false and untrue will therefore eternally exist in contrast to the eternal light of truth and life, without anyone being forced by that to eternally remain in that contrary condition, for you know that God, as the eternal love, wisdom, might and power can and will never be inactive, and that He will, out of Himself and throughout eternity, call creations into existence, will thus embody His thoughts and will lead them from His love and wisdom to a future independent existence by which in eternity there will be time enough and place enough in the endless space.

[3] And as long as any creation exists, a material object that is created will also exist for the divine pure spiritual, which in a certain way will, opposite to the pure deity, form the dark life's object of test. But this does not mean that this dark object should stay dark and evil for the whole of eternity, as little as this whole Earth and the sky with its stars that are visible to you, will remain eternally the way you can see them all now, but it will perish, and in the course of the time of times it will be entirely dissolved, and instead of that will come a new creation. That is why I say to you already now: See, I make all things anew, and you all will be My helpers in the new creation.

[4] You are limited here, in time and in space. Nevertheless, there are eternal and infinite things in you. You do not completely understand this now, but once you will entirely understand how even in the smallest grain of sand there is something similar. For let one of you, who can count, try to divide a grain of sand in little pieces, and let him tell Me when he is ready with it. I think that this work will still last too long for every counter, even for the best one, because he eternally will not be able to come to an end. However, as infinity is present in even the smallest thing, so is also

¹ eternity.

eternity.

[5] So when I speak about eternity and infinity, you also should understand its right meaning, and not as your shortsighted worldly reason inspires you.

[6] Look, with this I have given you manly and solid food now, for I can see that some of you are already more or less capable to digest this kind of food.

[7] When you will go out into the world in My name to proclaim My gospel to the people, you also will have to present this to the children as milk-food. For if you will begin with teachings like these, the people will think that you are madmen and they will certainly not listen to what you will teach and say, about which you should not be worried at all, for it will always be put into the mouth as to how and what you should say. Then My Spirit will do all the rest to all who received My Spirit through you and who are reborn in it. And out of this will also exist the sign that My words did not come to you from the mouth of a human being, but from the mouth of God. And now, My Simon Judah, are you more enlightened than before?"

38. THE LAST JUDGMENT



SIMON JUDAH said: “Lord and Master, this time I very well understood everything that You have explained now – *better* than ever before. But I have to confess that I was almost crushed by Your too great wisdom. It is easy for You to talk about such endless big things, even easier than when a lord of a house talks about his household goods. But our earthly reason feels the whole weight of Your endless omniscience and its own complete insignificant ignorance.

[2] O Lord, You will have to pour out a great deal of Your eternal Spirit of light before we will be able to understand all the things that You have revealed to us up to now. I thank You for this great mercy that You are giving us now, but I nevertheless can also see that we will not be capable to also pass on to our disciples all those

great secrets that You have revealed to us about the natural world, and besides that, those that are even greater concerning the spiritual Kingdom.”

[3] I said: “This is also not necessary for the moment. But My Spirit will do it for many whom I will call for that purpose. And for the children of this time it is sufficient that people should believe in Me that I have come from God the Father – for what concerns this body of Mine – and that every human being will, through this faith, pass over to the true knowledge of God, to the true love for Him and for his fellowman and by that also to eternal life.

[4] And so you will be the trumpets that everyone will hear, also those who are in the graves and who are held captive by the sea because of their endless many foolishnesses and sins, and they will come out of the graves. And also those who were held captive by the sea will be freed and clothed with the garment of life.

[5] For he who will be awakened by the trumpet, will not be awakened for death but for life. However, the one who will not want to hear the blare of the trumpet will also not be awakened but will stay in the night of his grave and in the captivity of the sea until the time when this whole Earth will be dissolved by the fire. For just like at the time of Noah they will marry and will let themselves be married and will not care about the voice of My awakened ones whom I will pull away in one moment. And the others, with all their favorite ones, I will give to the fire that destroys everything to which those who will then be living and not-penitent worldly people will be the ones themselves who will have utmost contributed to its existence.

[6] And look, that will be a last judgment on this Earth which will soon after you know a small start. But you also should not think that this fire will brake out immediately in all places and spots of the Earth at the same time, but gradually, so that the people will still receive time and space to better their life.

[7] Now there is in you quietly the question again as to what will happen with those unruly souls. Concerning this matter, think only

about what I just told you, namely that in the house of My Father are many habitations and schools for correction, then you will without difficulty be able to see what will further happen with such souls.

[8] But what I have told you now you should keep to yourselves, because the people as they are now cannot grasp or understand this. That is why the Jews, when they became more and more dark and stubborn at the time of the kings, could not understand anymore the last 3 books¹ that were mentioned to you, and they discarded them as being apocryphal.

[9] The Essenes, whom you know, were able to possess them at the right time and obtained many earthly benefits for themselves, which was of course not My will, just as little as that the people – with the means of all the powers that I gave them – would indulge into all the fierceness of sins and would entirely forget Me. Nevertheless, the people got rich in all kinds of good and bad experiences and returned to Me at various times, and by that they prepared for themselves ways for improvement and to the light. And so, also by the Essenes there will be a right light among many people.”

39. THE LORD GIVES JOHN AND MATTHEW ADVICE FOR THEIR ANNOTATIONS



S N this, My **John** said: “Should I take note on my parchment sheets about that which You taught us so mercifully today, or not? It could be at least important for the world after us.”

[2] **I** said: “You can leave this out, for in that time I will, when it is necessary, let such things be revealed to the people of good will by the mouth of new awakened helpers, seers and prophets. And in that time, those who will be awakened by Me and who will be born again in My Spirit, will be guided into all the truth and wisdom

¹ The 6th and the 7th book of Moses and the Prophetic book (see G.G.J. VI, 216:6).

that is necessary for them.

[3] However, besides the most important things of My work as Teacher on this Earth concerning the exceptional teachings and deeds that you have recorded in the lasting gospel that is written by you, you will also mention that I still have taught and said many things which are not written in that book. And even if they were written in books, the world – meaning the people – would not be able to grasp them. And this will be sufficient.

[4] For the rest, the fact that I will reveal Myself to those who believe in Me, love Me and keep My commandments of love, which you wrote down a long time ago, should be sufficient for everyone who will be baptized and strengthened by My Spirit from the Heavens.”

[5] When I gave this clear answer to John, he was completely satisfied with that, but the evangelist and scribe **Matthew**, who was also present, said: “Lord, I also assembled many notes with great zeal about Your teachings and deeds, and You did not say that these will also last.”

[6] **I** said: “Your notes will also last. However, the notes that you have written with your own hand will stay somewhere as Scripture, but they will not be very beneficial to the people with whom they will stay. But someone else, who will write in your name, will replace you, and his Scripture will last. And so you also can be satisfied and reassured.

[7] But since it is already late at night, we will give us some rest. The day of tomorrow will also bring its own.”

[8] The innkeeper came and stood with deep respect before Me and wanted to take us all to a bedroom.

[9] But **I** said: “Do this for the 3 pilgrims. We will stay the whole night like this at this table.”

[10] The innkeeper was satisfied with that and he took the 2 strangers, who were very surprised about My words which they did not understand, to their bedroom. They already rejoiced in the day to come to make further acquaintance with Me and My company and they thanked the innkeeper in their bedroom for his hospitality.

[11] We then rested as usual till sunrise, and we all stood up from the table by that time and went outside.

[12] A few hundred paces outside of the city there was a rather high hill that was about 100 feet higher than the already high level of land surface, and from that height we really had a beautiful and wide view over the great plains of the Euphrates. And to the west we could see a big part of the Jordan valley to the Dead Sea, a part of Jerusalem, Bethlehem and still a lot of other places up to the Lebanon.

[13] The innkeeper was not absent and came with us upon this hill, and he explained to us the things that could be seen in the east, in the south, in the west and in the north, for he knew this region very well, and My disciples were discussing with him.

40. THE HISTORY OF THE BASALT CITY AND ITS ENVIRONMENT



WHEN he finally also wanted to claim that the hill upon which we were standing was the mountain Nebo where Moses' earthly life ended, I said to him: "Now, My dear friend, you go too far with your knowledge of this region, because the environment of the mountain Nebo, from where also the misty environment of Jericho can be completely seen, is still a short day's trip further away to the south. But since you are so familiar with this environment, then tell Me also who the builder was of this black basalt city in which you live. Do you know his name?"

[2] **The innkeeper** said: "Lord and Master, I am not such an expert in history, but if I am not mistaken, it where the Gadites who build this city, for they say that from there, further to the north, the land belonged to the tribe of Gad, and further to the south, together with a part of happy Arabia towards the river of the Euphrates, everything must have belonged to the tribe of Ruben. However, the borders of these 2 lands seem to have greatly shifted during the evil time of the kings, and at the present time no one knows anymore exactly up to how far the tribe of Ruben

possessed the land and up to how far the tribe of Gad. We still think that this city of ours is a work of that tribe.”

[3] **I** said: “My dear friend, then you are in error for almost 1.000 years, because the builder of this city, as well as several other cities, was Edon, who still lived before Abraham and who possessed these pieces of land and a great part of happy Arabia up to the Euphrates and also a great part of the present Syria up to far beyond Damascus. So this city and several other cities were build by Edon and his descendants and are therefore not much younger in years than Babylon.

[4] Look, my dear *friend*, we are standing now on the hill where Abraham and Edon stood when they gave an offering in the faith of their heart and determined the borders of their lands. Everything to the west, as far as the eye can reach, belonged to Abraham, and the land to the east up to the Euphrates belonged to Edon and his descendants who later joined for the greatest part the descendants of Abraham. Look, now you know who the builder of these black cities was, which are strongly build, so much so that in more than 1.000 years from now on, the all destructing course of time will not really show.

[5] However, the inhabitants will in the course of time greatly decrease and be very poor because now the land is still fertile but then it will become a desert, and poor shepherds will only find scanty feed in the wet wintertime for their meager flocks. And they will not be too choosy to live there for a certain time, one time in this, and another time in one of the many other cities.

[6] Nevertheless, this already very waste region will, up to the Euphrates, become green again and will become a blessed place to live for people who are of good will in My name.”

[7] **On this, the innkeeper** said: “Yes, Lord and Master, I also read a similar prophecy in *the book of* the prophet Isaiah. But when will that time come? There is nothing in *the book of* the prophet about this. Can You, o Lord and Master, indicate a more precise time to me?”

[8] **I** said: “Not the year, the day or the hour, for this depends on

the doings of the people when they will again separate themselves from their worldly kings and will put themselves under My rulership, just like at the time of Moses and the judges. Nevertheless, I tell you with certainty that till then, not much more than 2.000 earthly years will pass.

[9] But in the part of the world that is now still very waste, which you call Europe, and from which the nations are ruling over you, that happy condition will come sooner, for in this old part of the world are still a great number of – understand it well – very hard stones that will not change so quickly and easily into fertile land. However, those hard stones can be compared to the equally hard hearts of the people which also can be changed with difficulty into fertile fields to receive My word.

[10] I say to you: before one tenth of the people of this big old part of the world will be in the full blessing of My teaching, the worst part of Europe will be more blessed in My teaching than the smallest and best part of this old part of the world, because a lot of fire will still be needed before the great number of people of this part of the world will feel the influence of the rays of My sun of life which will warm them up to eternal life.”

[11] **The innkeeper** said: “O Lord, then it looks very sad for us. That is why of course the great prophet could not tell anything with certainty about the time that this happy condition will return.”

[12] **I** said: “Yes, yes, My dear friend. Look, there in the faraway east, the sun comes up much sooner than in the faraway west. That is why, where the sun comes up much sooner, the night will also come much earlier, and this will be so till the sun comes up again. This is a very understandable, simply natural image for you, but there is also the spiritual behind it.

[13] In Me, the spiritual sun came up for you as first and most early, but therefore it will also set for you the most early. And when it will come up again, it will not come up from the west for you, but again from a very faraway east, because with Me everything happens in a certain order, and nothing happens contrary to that order, not materially, neither spiritually.

[14] You do not understand this matter yet, but soon the time will come that you will understand it.”

41. WHAT THE SUN ACTUALLY IS



HE innkeeper said: “O Lord and Master, I think that even the wisest angel-seraphim will in eternity not be able to completely understand what Your mouth is saying. But at this opportunity I have to ask You something special because today the sun is coming up so pure and beautiful – and this is very rare to see in this region from the east because of the many hazes that develop continuously on this immeasurable plain. Is the sun a fire of itself of which the flames illuminate the Earth so strongly that no one can ever make or see such enormous light on Earth?

[2] The extreme heat of the sun, which it sends to us at the same time, makes us guess that it must be an extremely strong fire. But since it shines just as much during the winter as now, and since we cannot feel much of the heat of its supposed fire, a few people are of the opinion that it is probably not a real fire after all. We form a community here, mostly composed of Romans, Jews, Greeks, Arabs and Egyptians, and there are different opinions among us, and we nevertheless cannot make any sense out of them.”

[3] **I** said: “In this way you will not make sense out of them for a long time because you all are surrounded of old by the deepest night of superstition. Whoever wants to understand it, should know that sunrise and sunset are only apparent because that which gives you the day and the night is caused by the turning of the Earth, which is no round disk as you think, but a very big ball. So the day and the night are nothing else but the result of the globe’s rotation, and for each rotation the Earth needs a time of about 24 of your hours.

[4] And as the Earth is no round disk, but a ball, so is the sun, but 1.000 times 1.000 times¹ bigger than this Earth. That it looks so

¹ A million times.

small the way you see it, is because of its enormous distance from this Earth. Even if I would tell you the number of hours it is away from the Earth, you still would not have any idea, for you are not enough knowledgeable in the Arabian system of numbers. But imagine a distance of almost 44.000.000 hours – a couple of Arabians who live here can translate this for you – then you will have a small idea of how far the sun is away from the Earth. And it does not turn around the Earth to bring about day and night, and it also does not sink each day into the big sea – according to the superstition of the Romans and the Greeks – as if it would take a bath and clean itself and then illuminate the whole Earth again in the full strength of its light.

[5] The sun rotates around the Earth in about 365 days, and this second movement of the Earth gives you a year with its spring, summer, autumn and winter.

[6] However, the sun as such is no fire, but what you can perceive as light is the beaming of its atmospheric surface that is caused by the rotation of the sun itself around its own axis and even more so by its extremely fast movement around a middle sun that is much further away from it. These movements of the sun in the vast ether space result in a big electric action. Through that, its brilliance of light is the same as your flashes of lightning, but with a much greater intensity and with the difference that the enormous process of the flashes of lightning continues uninterruptedly on the air surface of the sun while a flash of lightning on this Earth develops only to a small extent here and there by an increased friction of parts of the air and will therefore flash only for a very short time.

[7] But there are also regions and certain spots on this Earth above which lightning matter develops to a much larger extent and will therefore greatly lighten that spot for hours.

[8] If someone wants to convince himself he should travel to those regions of middle Africa where the highest and most extensive mountains of that continent are located, and there he will see many of such electric appearances. But he will be even more discouraged when often electrical storms will come over these regions by

which men can then better lock himself up in the deepest and darkest cellar because of the countless flashes of lightning and its cracking of thunder instead of admiring outside the lights of the dangerous, often numerous flashes of lightning.

[9] Yes, friend, not all natural phenomena on this small Earth are meant to inspire man such confidence to cheerfully bear and watch them without fear and trembling.

[10] But if strange natural phenomenal things happen now and then on this small Earth for you people, then how much more will it be the case on a big celestial body like the sun.

[11] Later in the spirit you all will be able to watch all this with the greatest joy and the greatest pleasure, but for your flesh this cannot be.

[12] With this, I have told you now what the shining of the sun actually is, and so I have given you a little spark of light. But what you cannot entirely understand now, in a thousand years and another few hundred years from now, My children in Europe, and still much further away, will calculate on their fingers, and this will greatly contribute to the decrease and finally the entire disappearance of the old, very primitive superstition. But for you it is sufficient to believe in Me and live and act according to My teaching. All the rest will be given to you at the right time.”

[13] The innkeeper thanked Me for this explanation that was very surprising to him, and he told Me that it was very similar to a dream he once had by the spirit of the prophet Elijah – from whose close relatives he was a descendant – and it was similar to what I, the Lord, just told him.

[14] “In that dream”, said **the innkeeper** further, “I had the feeling that I was high above the Earth and I did not see it as a round disk but as a big ball under my feet. Then I asked the spirit of Elijah what it meant.

[15] He said: ‘This you will hear from the One who was and will be forever before me.’

[16] Then I woke up again and I was in Joppe where I was born, because I am living here in this city for only 20 years.”

[17] While the innkeeper was still speaking, a messenger came and invited us for the morning meal. And we left our mountain and went to the house of our very friendly innkeeper.

42. THE LORD PREDICTS THAT THE STRANGERS WILL BE ACCOMMODATED BY THEIR KING



WHEN we were at the table, also the 2 strangers showed up and went to sit very shyly at their lonely little table. But I called them to sit at our table and join us in taking the morning meal. They did so at once, but with a shyness that is common to poverty despite itself.

[2] However, I soon inspired courage and comfort into them by which they became more open and conversational, and they told us many things about their king and their priests.

[3] I said to them: “The last hour will soon come for your priests, but the present king will still be a good man to you when he will hear of Me in a few years. When you will leave this place and will come in your country and will have given the taxes to the king – not one, but tenfold, if he wants to accept it – he will become very kind to you and ask you how you were able to gather so much gold and silver. Then tell him in all modesty how far you went beyond the Euphrates, what you saw and heard and how you received the money.

[4] Then he will accommodate you and gladly speak with you about Abraham, Moses and the other prophets, and especially about Me, since I am the One – although also in a body of flesh and blood – of whom all the prophets have prophesied. I will shortly send messengers to him who will show him in the clearest light what they saw and heard from Me. And when the messengers will go to the city where your king takes residence, they will come to you first and you will bring them to the king.”

[5] Then we soon took the morning meal. And I said to them: “Now that you are comforted, you can stand up and begin your trip back home. Outside of the house you will find everything you need

for your trip back home.”

[6] And they both gave thanks, stood up from the table and quickly took a glance into the alley through the door to see what kind of new things were there for the trip back home, for as no one had put a gift into their hand in the room, they were of little faith and therefore curious as to what they would find in the alley.

[7] When they were outside, they saw 6 camels of which 4 were heavily loaded with gold and silver and 2 were prepared for them to take them home and were also provided with as much gold and silver to very well provide the 2 with food till their return in their country.

[8] The way to their own country was quite far away and unsafe at some places because of robbing nomads, but the 2 arrived safely without any problem. They immediately did what I had advised them, after which the king became very kind to them, appointed them as his managers and gave back their wives and children, safe and sound and dressed in nice clothes.

43. THE SPREADING OF THE LORD’S TEACHING IN BABYLON



FEW years later, the apostle Matthew and his companion were very well accommodated by this king during their trip to India, and he stayed a whole year with him.

[2] And when he wanted to travel further to India with his companion, the king gave him a safe escort up to the borders of his kingdom. And so this apostle was among the first witnesses of Me to this king, and he wanted to convert people among the gentiles who were mostly servants of Baal in that city, which was still called Babylon at that time, although the old Babylon was located quite far away from this city and was like a great garbage dump.

[3] But **the king** advised him against it and said: “It is sufficient for me and my royal household to know and realize what we should believe and what this faith is all about. I and my son will take care of the rest, for I would not like you to be the prey of the

limitless anger of my priests. Once they gradually will become extinct and when I will have arranged to no more replace them, it will be easier to deal with the people.”

[4] **The 2 apostles were satisfied with the king’s remark and they did no more consider to spread My teaching among the people of this king.**

[5] **But 7 years later came Peter with his son Marcus to this king. He was likewise very well received and he also made suggestions to the king to at least make My teaching gradually known to the city.**

[6] **The king, who loved Peter and also Marcus, dissuaded Peter from doing this since he well knew by which spirit his priests of Baal were inspired, and especially to Peter he said: “Look, we live here in a country where especially further to the east up to the great river Ganges, it swarms with all kinds of wild and devouring animals, and not less all kinds of poisonous weeds. However, where God the Lord let such animals and poisonous plants live in large numbers, the soil and especially also the air is filled with evil spirits and devils, and they run around like hungry and roaring lions, tigers, panthers and hyenas and try to find some human being to devour.**

[7] **The previous mentioned animals are fierce and very malicious, and they only can be hunted with great danger, but my priests of Baal are even a thousand times more malicious, because each one of them has at least a thousand devils in him, and apart from me with my extreme severity and my soldiers who are mostly Jews, Greeks and Romans, no one else can go against them without problems, while I as king myself am only a vassal of Rome – which both of you will know – since the Roman kingdom reaches up to the Ganges after which the Indian kingdom starts of which still none of us knows the limits.”**

[8] **Although Peter liked the advice of the king but he nevertheless felt secretly the urge to discuss with some inhabitants of this city about My teaching and My Kingdom. The priests soon heard about this, and through their messengers they proposed to him to make**

known this blissful teaching also to them.

[9] For a long time, Peter did not want to be seduced by that, especially since his son and helper Marcus was seriously warning him against it and always said: ‘Let the king do the work for our case, we will not act against the will of the Lord if we follow the advice of the king here.’

[10] Nevertheless, after a couple of years, Peter went outside the city, as it were to walk, and there he met several beggars and sick people. He gave some money to the poor and he healed the sick ones by the power of My Spirit that lived in him.

[11] On this miracle, also several priests of Baal came among them. They recognized Peter and asked him very fervently to go with them a little further into the land.

[12] And he gave in to their many insistent requests and faithful assurances because they told him that in a near village lived a big number of sick people who could not be healed by any doctor. If he also would heal them, they and all the other priests would accept his teaching and destroy their temples with their own hands.

[13] After these words, Peter went with the priests and came after 1 hour indeed with them to a village with a great number of feverish sick people and possessed ones whom he all healed and where he even awakened a dead person to life.

[14] And **the healed ones** glorified Peter and said: “This man must be sent by the true God, otherwise it would not be possible for him to, only by his word, do for us which all our gods were never able to do.”

[15] This made the priests, who escorted Peter, extremely angry. They urged him kindly, but only outwardly, to still go with them and visit another small village which could be reached by going through a forest of myrtles and roses. In that forest they grabbed Peter, ripped off his clothes, beat him to death and hung him with his feet at a barren myrtle tree to which they attached a crossbeam at the bottom and attached his hands to it with ropes. They let him hang there and went then back to the city along another way.

[16] But because the king had the feeling that Peter stayed away

too long, he ordered to search for him everywhere, inside and outside the city, and he only succeeded the second day to find Peter in the myrtle forest, dead and severely brutalized.

[17] The healed ones told him also how the priests of the city brought him very kindly to them, how he miraculously healed them and that he moreover awakened a dead person to life. They also added that he then went with the priests further inside the country.

[18] This made the king very sad. He let Peter be buried with royal honor in the royal tomb and let also the myrtle tree be placed into the tomb.

[19] But the more than 2.000 priests in the city fared very badly. The king did not spare one of them, let them all be killed by his soldiers and let them then bring on more than 400 chariots far away to a desert where he let them be thrown out of the chariots to serve as feed for the many wild animals there.

[20] Then the disciple Marcus, with the help of the king and our 2 known managers, converted the people of almost the whole city to My teaching, and it did not last 1 year before the whole city, and soon after that, also almost the whole country, was blissfully converted to My teaching.

[21] On this occasion I informed you, My youngest disciples, where and how this first apostle for this world came to his end. Thus not in Rome, even less in Jerusalem, but in the new city of Babylon which later received the Saracen name of Baghdad.

[22] However I did not tell this to the disciples who were staying with our innkeeper in the city that you know, but only to you in this time. And now we can again take our former place, still sitting at the table of the innkeeper.

44. THE LORD BLESSES THE BARE REGION OF THE PERSISTING SHEPHERDS



HE innkeeper asked Me to stay a few more days with him. [2] But I said to him: “If you believe in Me, love Me continually and live and act according to My teaching, I will always stay with you in the spirit. But I will not stay long anymore with My body on this Earth, for My time is coming to an end, and I still have many things to do in other cities and villages. Therefore, I will immediately travel on with My disciples to the south.”

[3] Then the innkeeper brought more new wine and fresh bread. We took some of it, stood up from the table and prepared ourselves to continue our trip.

[4] When I had blessed the innkeeper and his whole family, they all thanked Me. And the innkeeper walked with us for almost 2 hours at which opportunity I still revealed many secrets of life to him by which he was greatly comforted.

[5] Then he returned home and we traveled on for more than half a day to the south over very bare and desolate ground. We only met a few shepherds with their meager flocks, and they walked towards us to either ask for alms or in the worst case to force us.

[6] However, My disciples, who formed all together a big group of people, threatened them and told them to withdraw, or else something evil might happen to them. On these threats, the shepherds, who gathered together and who were about 30 men, were also not very pleased, and they began to scold and rage against them. A few disciples, who knew the Arab language, understood this and they said to Me – even My John and the apostle Peter: “Lord, do You have no more flashes of lightning or fire against this miserable rabble? Let flashes of lightning and fire rain over these evil robbers like over the Sodomites.”

[7] I said to the disciples: “Altoran – this means: o children of thunder and wrath – should I punish these poor people even more than they already are? Do rather good to them instead of seriously

threatening them, then they soon will give you a better testimony and better words!”

[8] Then **I** let the shepherds come to Me and said to them: “Look, poor users of this bare region, gold and silver we do not have with us, and I as the Lord least of all, and even if we would give you silver and gold it would not be of much use to you in this vast desert. But I can do something else for you which will be useful to you. Look, you and your flocks have little to eat and you also have almost no water. I have the power to bless your region, and then you and also your flocks will soon no more suffer want. If this is all right with you, I will do it.”

[9] **All the shepherds** said: “Lord and Master, if You can do that, which we do not doubt because You said so, we will unspeakably prefer this than if You would change all those lumps of stone into gold and silver while among these treasures we and our flocks would suffer famine.”

[10] After these words of the shepherds I lifted My hands, thanked and blessed the region, and immediately the whole region had sufficient grass and also springs, and the huts of the shepherds were provided with bread and salt.

[11] When the shepherds saw this, they felt down before Me and praised Me greatly and said that I was not a human being but a God, for neither Moses, whose name they knew, nor his followers would ever have been able to do this.

[12] Then they brought us milk and bread and we all took some of it, continued our trip among the many praises of the shepherds, and even from afar we still heard the loud rejoicings of these happy shepherds.

[13] On the way **I** said to My disciples: “What do you now think is best: doing good to those who want to harm you or to repay evil with evil? That is why in the future you should love your enemies and bless them, and do good to those who want to harm you. In this way you will gather glowing coals on their heads and make many friends by that.

[14] Do in all things as I do, then during your trips in My name

you only will come across few stumbling blocks. But woe if you threaten those who come threatening to you and you want to immediately punish them. Then you will have to suffer much trouble on Earth. Love always engenders love, but anger and punishment again anger and vengeance.”

[15] The disciples wrote this in their heart and they promised Me to observe this until the end of their life.

[16] And **I** said to them: “Most of you will do that, but I also see a few among you who despite My advice will nevertheless at adverse circumstances make use of threats and punishment, but by that they will never make a good fruit completely ripe.”

THE LORD IN THE CITY IN NEBO

45. THE LORD AND THE PHARISEES BEFORE THE CITY GATE



WHILE I was teaching we came again close to an old city that was mostly inhabited by Romans but also by Greeks and Jews, and there we, as one use to say: were lucky or unlucky – no matter how one will name it – that we first met several Jews and among them a few Pharisees.

[2] **The Pharisees recognized Me and said to the Jews:** “Look, there must be that Nazarene with His disciples who at the last feast performed several so-called miracles, which He probably learned in the school of the Essenes after which He instructed the people in the temple that He is older than Abraham, and many other things.

[3] He was lucky then not to have been completely stoned, for we were very much irritated to see that He intended to present us as stupids before the people.

[4] At the same time He claims everywhere to be God’s Son, and His disciples and the people believe this from Him. And He does not care about the Sabbath. He is a glutton and a drunk and associates with toll collectors and sinners. But about us, who adhere to the precepts of Moses, He speaks with contempt everywhere, and at every opportunity He prospects eternal damnation for us.

[5] It is understandable that we cannot be friends with such person, especially since we know all too well from where He is, who His parents and His brothers and sisters are.

[6] But He certainly is not a fool, for He very well knows how to win the gentiles by His speeches and miracles – Romans as well as Greeks – in order to overthrow us with their help. But His plan will not succeed. And He should not come too often to Jerusalem, or else we will make an end to that divine sonship of His in a manner that truly will not be pleasant to Him.

[7] Now He commits His bad practices here in these gentile cities, certainly also with the purpose to set up the inhabitants as much as possible against us. But He will do bad business with that because Jerusalem will remain Jerusalem, even if a thousand of such sons of God like Him are against it.”

[8] My disciples could also fully understand these last words because at that time we were already close to that group. And they wondered about Me as to how I could tolerate and bear this.

[9] But I said to the disciples: “If you are so terribly offended because they give such bad testimony of Me, then go to them and bind the mouth of each one of them so that they cannot speak anymore. I think that this will be a very difficult task for you. Anyway, it is easier for us to pass them by silently.

[10] Let the dogs bark, for as long as they bark they will not bite. But if they will attack us and bite when we pass by, then we will show them that our mouth is not without teeth and our hands not without nails.”

[11] These words of Mine calmed down My disciples for the greatest part, but inwardly they were nevertheless boiling, so that a few of them also liked to say something against those Jews and Pharisees which they would not have liked, but they controlled themselves and followed My example.

[12] We soon came close to them, did not look at all where they stood and passed them by silently.

[13] However, these Jews and Pharisees were driven by curiosity to see and watch what we would do in this city. And before we reached the city gate, 2 Pharisees came with a fast pace towards us just at the gate to prevent us from entering the city.

[14] One of them, whose name was Dismas, asked Me sharply what I wanted to do in that city, if I would stay or only pass through it.

[15] And I said to him: “Are you here perhaps a judicial city officer who is the only one who has the right to question travelers as to why they came to the city and can ask them to see their travel papers?”

[16] **Then that Pharisee said:** “I am not a judicial city officer but I am a chief of the Jewish community here and as such I also have the right to ask the travelers for what reason they came to this city, and especially You and Your company, for I know You from Jerusalem and know all too well that You are not a friend of us, and You do not keep our old precepts in the least, for we cannot and will not accept what You often loudly claimed to be before us and the people.

[17] We know that You can do many thing, can speak wisely and are capable to perform signs which bring all people to great amazement, but You are also our enemy and You try to bring us to ruin, us who keep the old laws. But take care to see if You will reach Your goal, for Your wonder signs which You learned from the Essenes will soon be perceived, and then it will appear what else You can do.

[18] You can deceive the gentiles with that, but not us who are ancient descendants of Abraham. But if You really can do something godly, then perform a sign before us, then we will believe that You can do more than all the Essenes and other magicians on Earth, and that You are really filled with the Spirit of God.”

[19] **I said:** “I performed many tremendous signs in your presence, never performed by a human being on this Earth, and you said that Beelzebub, the chief of devils, had helped Me. If you believe this – and it was in that same belief that also your forefathers stoned and killed almost all the ancient prophets because they also said that they had the devil and that it was with his help that they made predictions and performed signs – then how can there be any light in you to recognize the truth of My teaching and My deeds?

[20] You have Beelzebub as father, and you teach and act according to his inspiration, which I very well can see. For this reason I came to you several times, to free you out of his shackles, but you prefer to remain servants of the devil rather than to become servants of the one and only true God whom you do not know and have never known. Then remain with your servitude.

I will remain with Mine, and quickly I will reveal before the eyes of the whole world who you are and who I am. And let us now go, and may it go well with you in the name of whom you serve.”

[21] These words of Mine offended these Pharisees so greatly that they wanted to bring Me and My disciples immediately to the office of the judicial city officer.

[22] But I said to them: “I am the Lord, and I will do what I want. You better take care that you will not sooner have to deal with the judicial city officer.

[23] I came with My disciples to you very peacefully and I did not want to trouble any of you, not with a word neither with a facial expression, although I heard from afar what kind of lowly talk you had about Me among each other. I therefore would have had the right to call you to account as to whom gave you here the right in a foreign country to criticize Me with which neither Me nor any of My disciples can be pleased. And thus, I say to you one more time that I am the Lord and have the power to enter this city and not to let Myself be hindered by you. But if this will not be sufficient to you and you want to remain with your intention I will know how to act against it.”

[24] After these words of Mine, **Dismas**, who took this whole matter to heart, said to his very stubborn companion: “In God’s name, let them go. Let us simply return to our group, for I do not want to further interfere with such people who possess secret powers. If they act against God’s will, God will know how to chastise and to destroy them at the right time. But if they nevertheless act according to the will of the Almighty, we will not be able to do anything against them.”

[25] But the companion of Dismas did not want to listen to that and called the others, who slowly walked behind them to help them and to jointly bring Me and My disciples to the judicial city officer.

[26] I said: “Up till here and no further with your Beelzebub-*rage* against Me and My disciples! I will put up guards before you who will prevent you from entering any gate of this city! And those

guards will also be the sign that you wanted to receive from Me! Hopefully you will see by that that I am truthfully a Lord over all creatures on this Earth and also a Lord infinitely far beyond, much further than you can ever imagine! I want it, and so be it!”

[27] At that same moment, 14 big, angry lions stood before the Jews who were coming after us, and one of them grabbed the stubborn companion of Dismas and brought him back to his companions.

[28] But Dismas fell before Me on his knees and asked Me to spare him since he thought very differently about Me, and that he as much as possible spoke words in My favor already several times in the High Counsel, but that it was like pouring oil on the fire, and he recognized that he finally by necessity had to bark along with the dogs. Now his stubborn companions should bark against the lions, and these will probably not be scared of their barking.

[29] I said to him: “Go before us into the city and bring us to an honest inn. After that you can go to the judicial city officer Titus and tell him that I wait for him in that inn.”

[30] Dismas thanked Me, stood up and brought us immediately to an inn close by in this city.

46. THE WINE MIRACLE IN THE ROMAN INN



WHEN we entered, at once the owner of the inn, a Roman in heart and soul, came very politely to us, invited us to take a seat and asked us what we wanted.

[2] I said to him: “Although the day is already quite advanced and the sun is almost setting, and apart from some bread we did not take anything since this morning. Nevertheless, it is a little too early for an evening meal. Therefore, for the time being you can put some bread and wine for us on the table.”

[3] **The innkeeper** said: “My dear friends, bread I have, as well as smoked meat of pork and sheep, and I still have milk in store, but poultry, fish and wine can only seldom be obtained in this city and are very expensive things on the table of travelers because from

here to the deep Jordan valley it is firstly very far, and the few footpaths from here to that place are very difficult to access, and so we cannot bring anything cheap and eatable from the blessed western regions. Our soil is, as you noticed along the way, not very fertile because of lack of soil and also lack of water. Our city wells, which still contain water, are cisterns, and springs are far away from here. Before coming to the springs of the Arnon, one will not easily find another spring, and they are still far away from here. Therefore, I will give you bread and milk.”

[4] **I said to the innkeeper:** “Give us rather water from your cistern instead of milk.”

[5] **The innkeeper did according to My wish, brought a big stone jar full of fresh water from the cistern and put a couple of barley breads for us on the table while he said:** “This is the only kind of grain which can still abundantly grow here, but for wheat it is very difficult, for no matter how soon you sow it in the winter, the next spring it withers before it becomes ripe. That is why we have to obtain the wheat for our own use from Damascus, which city is far away from here, or we have to obtain the wheat completely from Babylon which is still further away from here than Damascus. But we have enough barley for ourselves, and besides milk and meat, it is the most important ingredient of our food. Therefore, you only can be satisfied with what I can offer you.”

[6] **I said:** “Everything that is blessed by God is good.”

[7] **The innkeeper said:** “I immediately noticed that you are Jews because you did not wish the good pork meat that we have, but I think, if there is a real God, that He also blessed the pork meat and not only the meat of chickens, sheep, goats and beef. I am an honest Roman and keep the laws of Rome which I think are very good, although they were only made by men and not by gods.

[8] To what benefit is it for men to have certain divine laws which are always written in dark and incomprehensible words and are interpreted by the priests according to their own will and interest? So let the gods give laws for themselves as much as they like, we men who became wise through experience will give laws for

ourselves which we can understand and keep, and we also have done that. Our most important gods are good, fertile years and the powers of the elements which have achieved such years. And now I wish that our bread and water will be tasteful to you and that you will like it.”

[9] **I** said: “Dear innkeeper, put down a cup for each one of us, of which you surely will have enough.

[10] **Then the innkeeper put earthen cups on the table, as many as we were sitting at the table.**

[11] **I also said to the innkeeper: “Take also a cup for yourself and drink with us.”**

[12] **The innkeeper did so, supposing that he first had to drink his water to encourage us to drink it also. So he firstly filled his own cup and drank, but after his first sip he was surprised and he happily put it down at once and said fully amazed: “But what is this, my dear gentlemen guests? I only brought you water, and now that I tasted it, it is undoubtedly the best wine which I only drank once on the island of Cyprus.”**

[13] **I said to the innkeeper, after that I also had filled My cup: “Now drink, just like we all, for from where you took that wine you surely must have more in store.”**

[14] **The innkeeper said: “O yes, my dear gentlemen guests, my cistern is still more than half full, and if that will contain such wine instead of water, we will have enough wine for more than a year. But a miracle has happened here, and now I believe for the first time in miracles, although since My youth I never believed in it, even when in my young years I often enough have seen all kinds of miracles being performed by certain priests and magicians. Actually, my father was very familiar with such things, and for everything he gave me a good explanation, and so I, as an honest, well educated Roman, acquired a just disbelief in and disgust against all performances of wonders and magic. But a miracle has been performed with the water of my cistern. But how and by whom, that does not matter to me now. In time it will become clear because it is a good and not an evil miracle.”**

47. THE DISCUSSION ABOUT THE WINE MIRACLE



WHILE the innkeeper was making his clever Roman remarks, our **Dismas** came already with the supreme judicial city officer, brought him to Me and said to him:

“This is the Lord who wants to see you and speak with you.”

[2] **I** said to the innkeeper: “Put another 2 chairs and 2 cups, for I actually came to this city to especially give these 2 people a complete valid proof of My glory.”

[3] **The innkeeper** did this immediately, and I poured out from the stone jar and filled the 2 cups and told them to drink.

[4] **They both** took the cups to their mouth and said: “O innkeeper, from where did you get this wine? It is very exceptional to receive wine from you, and actually the best emperor wine of the island of Cyprus. Tell us, from where did you bring it?”

[5] **Somewhat shyly, the innkeeper** said: “My lords, believe it or believe it not, but I honestly speak the truth and say: from the cistern of my house. These gentlemen guests asked for water instead of milk. I brought it from my cistern and put it with my own hands on the table, and no one touched the jar before I poured out this jar into my cup. But when I put the cup to my mouth, its content was no water, but, as you tasted yourself, the very best and most expensive wine from Cyprus. You know that I am not a believer of miracles, but this I consider to be a perfect miracle.”

[6] **On this, the supreme judicial city officer** said: “Let us go together with the jar to the cistern and taste the water immediately after taking from it, then it will appear immediately if you possess such miracle cistern.”

[7] **Then the innkeeper** took the jar that had become empty anyway and rushed outside with the supreme judicial city officer to the cistern that was located in the inner court of the inn.

[8] **The supreme judicial city officer** scooped the water with his own hands, tasted it immediately at the cistern and discovered that it became wine again.

[9] **He joyfully** brought the jar with his own hands to the spacious

guest room, put it on the table and said aloud (**the supreme judicial city officer**): “This is truly a clear miracle as men on this Earth have never experienced. Such miracle can be done by God, but never by a human being.”

[10] **Dismas, who had already emptied the second cup of wine and became by that very joyful and cheerful, agreed with the innkeeper and the supreme judicial city officer and said:** “To what use is it for the other stubborn temple fools to have treated this real Lord of God’s glory with dark, rude brutality? Outside before the gate and watched by 14 lions they probably will begin to sweat blood from fear and fright while we are here joyfully and cheerfully drinking the best of wine from Cyprus from the vineyards of the emperor and of which I drank a little only once, and here I can drink it with cups.

[11] Therefore, I also say and I confess that He, who was able to make appear by His willpower those 14 lions at the city gate in a flash of lightning, and was now with the same speed capable to change the water from the cistern into the best emperor wine from Cyprus, is not a simple human being, but in Him lives really the fullness of the divine Spirit. And this testimony, which I have now spoken out, will follow me into the grave. And now I also understand all Your other miracles, which You, o Lord, have done in Jerusalem and also in other places.

[12] But those outside the gate will hardly ever understand this. Maybe during the night those 14 lions will chase out the devils that possess them, and then they will be more accessible for the divine truth than today. But You are the Lord and can do what You want.”

48. THE RELEASE AND THE CONVERSION OF THE PHARISEES WHO ARE WATCHED BY THE LIONS BEFORE THE CITY GATE



AFTER these words, the supreme judicial city officer was really curious to know about the watch outside the city gate, and he asked Me if I would like to escort him outside, because he was very afraid of the lions.

[2] But I said to him: “Go unworried with Dismas to the city gate and none of those animals will do you any harm.”

[3] On this, the supreme judicial city officer and Dismas had full confidence and went with him courageously to the city gate.

[4] There, those who were watched by the 14 lions, asked him to release them from this terrible burden.

[5] **The supreme judicial city officer** said: “Turn to the Lord whom you terribly slandered, for it is only up to Him to release you from this burden.”

[6] **The Jews and the few Pharisees** shouted: “Then ask Him to have mercy on us, and we will believe in Him.”

[7] They both came immediately back and told this to Me.

[8] I said: “Well then, do you also never repay evil with evil. Then those before the city gate will be released from their burden.”

[9] At that moment the furious watchers retreated, and those who were watched came in full faith to us and were quickly strengthened with the water from the cistern.

[10] When the Jews and the few Pharisees at another table not far from us had strengthened themselves with the water from the cistern, the formerly most furious **Pharisee**, who with Dismas wanted to hinder Me to enter the city, stood up and said: “Lord and Master, now I also believe that You are really the One whom all Jews and also the gentiles have waited for in vain.

[11] If You would have appeared in this manner, like most of the prophets have announced You, starting with Moses, we never would have had any difficulty to meet You in full faith. But You came into this world in such a manner that one could not suspect

in the least that You are the promised Messiah of the Jews, and through them also of all men on Earth.

[12] As almost everyone in Jerusalem knew Your ancestry, because Your father and mother, and also Your brothers, were very well known, for how often did it happen that Your father, as a generally known skilled carpenter and furniture maker, had work to do with us in Jerusalem and that You often worked with him and Your brothers as a carpenter. You suddenly appeared as the same carpenter amongst several disciples as Teacher of the people, taught in Jerusalem and gave a sharp testimony. Therefore, You will understand that our hatred against You had to greatly increase when at every time You appeared in Jerusalem You put us on the spot before the people and witnessed against us that we were no servants of God whom we did not know, but only devouring wolves in sheep's clothing and would therefore be servants of Beelzebub. That we thus would not allow the people to come to the light and thus also not to let them enter into Heaven, and that also we did not want to enter. And so there were a great number of such belittling testimonies which we heard with our own ears or that were truthfully reported to us by others.

[13] Therefore, every well thinking person will understand that we never could treat You friendly and that our hatred against You had to continuously increase because Your scornful words about us also increased.

[14] You moreover performed extraordinary miracles and You therefore, without difficulty, made the people to turn away from us, and our income diminished in general with 2.000 pounds of gold in 2 ½ years. And You also made the people to believe that You are the Son of the one living God by which You, to our great vexation, seriously gave the biggest blow to the old law of Moses, for it is stated: 'I alone am Your God and your Lord, in whom you shall believe, on whom you shall build and in whom you shall trust. Beside Me there is no God. Therefore, you shall have no other gods beside Me.'

[15] But You said that You are God's Son and that the only true

God in Heaven is Your Father whom only You have seen and know, but no human being, and we, servants of the temple, least of all.

[16] In addition, David spoke quite differently about the coming of the Messiah than the way Your coming took place, since he said: 'Make the doors wider and the gates higher, so that the King of Honor can come in. Who is the King? It is Jehovah Zebaoth.'

[17] Now You will realize and understand with natural sound reason that You, being a carpenter in Galilee, despite all Your wisdom concerning the Scripture could not be considered a King, not even a prophet, for it is explicitly written that a prophet can never arise from Galilee.

[18] Lord, forgive me that I have now very frankly and openheartedly explained the reason why You are so hated by many, by far most of the Pharisees, high priests, Levites and also other Jews who adhere to the temple, and why also You Yourself made not only a bad impression by Your very extraordinary miracles, but by that You put them more and more against You. I previously also belonged to them, and just like my colleagues, I was of the opinion that You learned Your miracle doings from the Essenes whom we hate above all, *that You* wanted to bring us to ruin with their help and wanted to allow an extensive working sphere for the Essenes, and this because the Romans, who are our lords and permanent enemies, are fond of this sect and give them all kinds of possible privileges and advantages, for they very well and effectively can use these Essenes for their imperious purposes.

[19] For we know how the Essenes perform their miracles, and we secretly learned a few things from them ourselves. And that is why we never were sweet and friendly regarding Your miracle works, for we also saw similar things from them. Because in our so-called blind anger we never wanted to take the time to critically compare Your deeds and those of the Essenes, and I honestly confess that in this old gentile city for the first time a real light has come up in me about You.

[20] The 2 signs which You have done here, put only now the

signs which You performed earlier in their true light, by which all the other signs are completely non-important and are set in the background, and before our eyes they make You in full earnest the One who would come to us as David announced. For firstly, in this whole region there are no lions, because these animals are mostly only living in Africa and such beasts only very rarely stray away to Arabia and will soon return when they cannot find any food in the vast deserts. But at a sign from You, immediately 14 of such beasts stood before us. This would already be very difficult if those animals would live in multitudes in the country. You, the Lord over all creatures, must really have created them. It cannot be otherwise.

[21] And when You can do that, then You secondly must also be easily able to change the water from the cistern of this innkeeper into excellent emperor wine from Cyprus, of which I only once received a little full cup to taste at a table *dinner* of our king Herod.

[22] Whether You know my name or not, that does not matter to me, but You certainly must also know it. But I give You here the assurance that I and all these companions of mine will never more vote against You at a meeting of the High Council. We hardly will be able to shut the mouth of the many others because we feel much too powerless for that, but, as said, we always will believe in You in our heart, no matter what will happen. And, as said, out of our mouth will never again sound a vote against You.”

49. THE PREDICTION OF THE LORD TO BARNABAS



AFTER this rather long apology of the Pharisee, whose name was Barnabas, I said: “I accept your apologies and your present confession as valid, and I forgive all your sins. And when I forgive someone’s sins, they are truly forgiven, in Heaven and on Earth.

[2] You once will become a good worker in My vineyard, and in My name you still will have much to endure. And when this, what

I am telling you now beforehand, will come over you, you will remember it, but remain without fear, for I will not leave you alone.

[3] In these days, the Kingdom of Heaven must suffer great violence. The one who will not draw it to himself with violence will not take it into possession.

[4] The time is short for Me to be among the people in this world as now and work among them. After that, I will be glorified in a, for this world, really very unpleasant and sad manner, and only then, for all those who believe in Me, I will establish an eternal Kingdom of life in which I will live, and all those who belong to Me will be where I am.

[5] Believe Me, that whoever believes in Me, lives and acts according to My teaching and loves Me above all and his fellowmen as himself, will already in this life receive the eternal life and will never more die, even if he would die, if this would be possible, for what his body is concerned, a hundred times, for just as I will continuously live from My own might and power, even if this earthly body will be taken away from Me, his soul with My Spirit in him will live continually, will be extremely happy and will rule with Me in eternity.”

[6] Everyone was satisfied with this promise of Mine, and upon this they believed.

[7] Since it was already evening, the innkeeper asked Me whether it was not the time to prepare a good evening meal.

[8] I said: “The most pleasant evening meal to Me is when I have found back and gained all these people from My tribe who were lost. But ask the others what they want to eat.”

[9] And **Barnabas** stood up and said: “O Lord and Master, also for us the best evening meal consists of the fact that You came to us and that we recognized You as the One whom You are. Besides, we have enough bread and wine. Then what kind of other physical food do we need?”

[10] Then I said to the innkeeper: “Go to your storeroom and see what you can find there which can be eaten by us Jews. Let it be

well prepared and put it then before us on the table.”

[11] The innkeeper left the room and found on a big table, which was put there for the preparation of the food, a big quantity of fish that was already opened and cleansed by which he, his wife and his children of sheer astonishment slapped their hands above their head.

[12] **The innkeeper** returned immediately to us in full joy and said: “Me dear gentlemen guests, a third miracle! You know how difficult it is to obtain fish in this region, and look, the big table in the storeroom on which we prepare the food is full of very fresh, but already cleansed, noble fishes, which will be more than enough for us all for 3 days. They only have to be prepared, for which I already gave instructions, and then we will we satiated with a very rare food.”

[13] **Then Barnabas and also Dismas** said: “With God all things are possible, and it does not surprise us at all anymore since we have Him in our midst to whom nothing is impossible. For the One who could fill all seas, lakes and rivers with all kinds of fishes and other animals can also out of Himself make appear everywhere as many fishes as He wants. And we confess now that in this Man Jesus from Nazareth in Galilee lives physically the fullness of the deity. And he who believes otherwise is still far away from the truth.”

[14] **I** said: “Stay with this belief and let no one deceive you innerly, for by such belief in Me you will stand justified before Me and I will give you the eternal life and awaken you on the youngest day.”

[15] With these words of Mine they were satisfied.

50. THE CONFESSION OF FAITH OF THE SUPREME JUDICIAL CITY OFFICER



OW also the **supreme judicial city officer**, who sat next to Me at our table, stood up and said: “Lord and Master,

You know that I am a Roman who is very familiar with all sciences. Otherwise they would not have appointed me as supreme judicial city officer of one of the biggest communities of the mountain Auran. As I had to dedicate myself since my youth in all kinds of knowledge and science in order to, after performing severe tests, become what I am now and still can promote, it is in a certain way obvious that already in my earliest years I was able to sufficiently know the complete emptiness and meaningless of our idolatry and despise it. And I preferred a wise man a thousand times more, whether he was a Greek or a Roman, than all our Egyptian, Greek and Roman demigods and full gods.

[2] Also the great emperor August greatly contributed to exterminate that old idolatry as much as possible. Instead of that, he himself greatly honored the true sciences, and at his palace in Rome he surrounded himself with scientists from all countries. And he banned the known poet Ovid from Rome for life, for he wrote in that same time under the name of ‘Metamorphosis’ a kind of teaching about the gods for which the priests secretly urged him against payment.

[3] August’s successor, under whom I was born and educated, had the same attitude, and since I rejected the gods so much, which was pleasing to the emperor, I already received such prominent position in my young years as I occupy now while I am still not even 30 years.

[4] But by throwing away all those idols, I also threw away the faith in the immortality of the human soul after death – and I thought that it was completely right.

[5] I did not become an epicure by that for what my way of living is concerned, but all the more for what my faith is concerned, which did not become completely clear to me by the reading of the

books of many philosophers, neither by my various experiences. [6] Yes, I also read with great attention the works of a Socrates and Plato, but their proofs of the survival of the human soul was as mute as they became themselves, for they could not find it in the whole known nature. If it were different, then these very highly esteemed writers would have given a very clear sign of their ideas that, as it were, continued to exist in the beyond and so that it could be recognized that they did not die or perish. Such sign would certainly be for us, searching and thinking men, a great benefit, for I believe that a soul who continues to live after death would at least take care to let the spiritual works which he produced in his body have a positive influence on us men who still live on this Earth.

[7] But these great men who were highly esteemed in the whole world have died according to the worldly laws of nature, and after the death of their body they never gave the least of sign of what they taught and claimed to be true. Every hour of the day there are all the more and significant proofs to every man that the life of the soul will not continue to exist after the death of his body, because what we can see exists only for a certain time – for a longer or shorter time, this is actually not important.

[8] That which has once died and perished, has died and perished and will never again appear as the same. A plant that has died, withered and decomposed – although it will fertilize the soil – will never more appear as completely the same plant. And the one who says the dead are mute and give no more sign of life are right, and also he is right *who says* that everything that has died call out to us from the graves of decomposition the meaningful words: ‘We were, we have perished and will be no more, except as an atom that fertilizes and multiplies this soil for a short time.

[9] I became so familiar with this viewpoint, which is truthfully very obvious, that I now have no more fear of death in the least but am only looking forward to it, because my present awareness tells me that before this existence of mine, eternities upon eternities have passed, and I never felt sadness or sorrow in myself for the

fact that I was not a continuous witness of those endless long periods of time.

[10] However, the fate and the powers of nature called me to a self-conscious existence of which I never knew the reason and the purpose. They probably wanted to create in me, as well as in other creatures, a momentary admirer of their existence and works. But to what advantage is that finally to me and to what advantage is it to them? If the admirer ceases to exist, then together with him, all the rest cease also to exist, for whether one world exists or numberless worlds with their wonders, for him, who never existed himself or will never more exist, they do not exist anymore and they also practically never existed.

[11] For that reason I absolutely do not despise what I found in the world, but I consider it as something which is almost completely without meaning and value. What I value most is what is real, realistic and a complete non-existence, because when I am not, then I also do not think, do not want anything and am doing nothing, have no awareness, neither good or bad, and I therefore will eternally not owe anything to anyone, will not have to keep any law nor to fear any punishment from men and certainly not from the non-existent gods.

[12] Look, great Lord and Master, this was my – and also of my parents – complete confession of faith since my young years for which we have found irrefutable proofs and reasons in nature which says the same everywhere. The one who will fully keep these basic principles in his short active life will stay an honest man until his last hour, for he knows that he is a complete nothing and so he also knows that everything that surrounds him shares the same fate with him.

[13] When I came over to the Jews with such basic principles of faith and saw them praying and make them do penance, I felt really sorry for them because they were so shortsighted. Just like among the gentiles a lot of superstition must be in them which makes their mind maybe somewhat happy but will on the other hand mostly greatly destroy it. And the creators of this superstition, as well as

for all other nations on Earth, are certainly the group of priests who let them be well served and fed by the people for the deceit that they invented themselves, who are not concerned in the least for a people's salvation that comes from somewhere else, and think by that: 'When death has devoured you, then together with us, you will have enough of everything for eternity.'

[14] But I was not satisfied with that and I myself acquired the books of the Jews, read through them very attentively, and I must honestly confess that they were too mysterious to me and could not understand them. The best part of it was that they spoke about only one God who is very good and righteous, but several threats with eternal punishments that can be expected in the beyond are also not lacking, just like in the ancient teaching of the myths of the Egyptians, Greeks and Romans. So I put the books aside and said also: 'You also are a work of weak men of this Earth just like our idols, gods and the many books about them of which a lot can be found in the great library in Alexandria.'

[15] Great Lord and Master, this was my belief up to now, but now, in Your presence, for the first time I feel in myself – although caused by Your deeds and few words – that my belief is wrong after all. Therefore I ask You to give me a true light, especially for what You truthfully meant with Your awakening for the eternal life on a certain youngest day.”

**51. THE MATERIALISTIC CRITICISM
OF THE SUPREME JUDICIAL CITY OFFICER
ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF MAN**



SAID: “I have known many believers like you whom I converted, for I prefer those a lot more than the so-called believers and the superstitious. That is why I will have no problem with you. But there are the fishes. I will continue this conversation with you after the evening meal.

[2] When I had said that to the supreme judicial city officer, the fishes, which were excellently prepared, were brought on various big stone platters into the guestroom, as well as all the tableware that was necessary for eating this kind of evening meal. We immediately took a fish on our plate and ate it quickly because it was completely prepared in the Jewish manner so that while eating it we had no trouble picking out the bones.

[3] It was so tasty to **the supreme judicial city officer** that he put another fish on his plate. When he also had finished that one, he said: “Great Lord and Master, life has also its pleasant moments which death does of course not have, and these pleasant moments consist of the happiness of being now and then among good and wise friends, and secondly, when our stomach is hungry, to strengthen us with well tasting food, and after that with a cup of well tasting wine.

[4] Yes, under these circumstances man would of course prefer to live eternally instead of letting oneself be strangled to death after a short life by an ever miserable and painful death. In that respect I could and can never agree with the whole nature and its powers which always work in the same way.

[5] But since man has to die, why not let him die in a pleasant way – sweet and joyful to his whole being? But no, for this little, mostly very burdensome existence he finally must be tortured in a very unmerciful and humiliating way till he finally becomes worthy of the great mercy by one or the other almighty fate to stop his existence for all eternal times.

[6] This arrangement of the otherwise very beautiful nature is really something that must be highly disgusting, despicable and reprehensible to every righteous thinking man, even to the one who in one way or another superstitiously believes in his flesh in an everlasting life of his poor soul. Such person would certainly also prefer to say goodbye in a more pleasant way to this pitiful world than *to die* in the usual manner.”

[7] **I said:** “So you are a sharp critic of creation and you are really not satisfied with the arrangement of all the existent conditions of life on this Earth? What else is not right, except for what you already criticized?”

[8] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “Oh, great Lord and Master, if I would criticize all the things which are absolutely not righteous and fair to me based on the best laws concerning the arrangement of this world, I will have to speak a whole year. But as a friend of justice I want to be very short and will only touch a few main points. One will be able to imagine all the rest.

[9] Look at the miserable birth of man, which is in a certain way the crown of nature’s creative qualities. Why is his birth and his arrival in the world not at least similar to that of the animals, especially to the birds in the sky that already a few days after their arrival in this natural world receive the complete use of their life forces and they can rejoice in it till they reach their end?

[10] But no, man must come into this world more miserable than no matter what kind of animal, naked, without power, helpless like a stone that lies on the road.

[11] If his parents would not be compelled by some kind of instinctive love to take care of the new world citizen till he had the chance to become some kind of half human being, life and survival of every human being born in this world would be such that he would not even survive 2 days.

[12] I could be satisfied with 1, 2 or 3 years for the parents to take care of a newly born child, but often more than 12, yes sometimes more than 20 years till the child can develop himself to the point that he finally can progress in the world himself, is really too much

and also too stupid, and this is absolutely not to the honor of the creative quality of the active powers of nature, but rather the opposite in every respect.

[13] If it could not give men any better way of existence, it had better given up for all times to bring things into existence, for by that it obtained little praise from civilized humanity in the world. But I do not want to criticize this great nonsense of creative nature too much.

[14] If that nature wanted at all costs to have someone on this Earth in the form of a human being who can think and is self-aware with the purpose of knowing that Creator, praise Him and give Him the honor, then it or that Creator should make it possible for man to let him progress in his thinking at least as far as I did. Then he should come into a durable stability, and in that he should exist, wise, strong and healthy, just like the Earth exists while its most important parts are very little changing, just like the moon, the sun and the other stars.


[15] But no, after about 30 or at most 40 years, man reaches a similar point of view. On condition that his original life's forces are suited for that, which is however very seldom the case because almost all human beings will, already as a child, happily return from where they came. Man, who became stronger in every respect, will soon, after reaching the highest point in his life, become more or less sick, and if he is lucky to become perhaps 70, 80 or 90 years old he is therefore not to be envied because such old age is not a life anymore but only an already more complex sickness which will gradually bring him to death and non-existence, just like any other human being.

[16] What for? How can a creating, wise Power think that this is good, just and useful while every somewhat awakened human mind has to reject it as unwise and useless, and has to condemn it as something evil, bad and contrary to justice?

[17] My dear great Lord and Master, this is the most important argument on which grounds I have to declare every other reason of creative nature to create and bring into existence, objectionable

and at the same time completely unwise. And finally I still have to praise those men who let themselves be lulled to sleep into a very dark superstition, for in this they can find a happy reason to revenge all the bitter suffering which they endured in this world. [18] But even that happiness, which can be expected after physical death, stands under such thumbscrews of coercion and deceit that an honest man must be astonished about the conditions to come to that happiness because the possibility of not reaching that happiness forms a very large road, while the possibility of reaching that happiness is put on such steep, narrow very thorny path that he finally would prefer not to be happy at all rather than accepting the lifelong climbing up under all the torments and tortures of life. [19] And now, Lord and Master, I finished talking in my real Roman and city judicial manner. Be so kind to say something better than I was able to tell You.”

52. THE LORD ASKS THE SUPREME JUDICIAL CITY OFFICER A FEW QUESTIONS TO THINK ABOUT

 SAID: “Yes, My dear judicial city officer, as a worldly ruler you spoke well, and every worldly intelligent man like you can only see it the same way. But despite that, you are seriously wrong for what concerns the life of men and all the other creatures.

[2] Judging according to appearance, which is always deceiving, you are of course right, but for what the inner truth of life is concerned, certainly not, because everything you can see alive in the world is in the sphere of its life a thousand times more indestructible than everything you can imagine to be indestructible.

[3] Your most important principle is that you do not believe that the soul of a person survives after the falling away of his body.

[4] On that point I can bring you to a complete different belief with only one appearance from the region of the beyond, but we still have time for that. I first want you to bring to a totally different conviction along another way.

[5] I will ask you now very short questions which you can easily answer, and your own answers will soon bring you to another view of the wisdom of the Creator, and then you will laugh about your present opinion.

[6] Tell Me, My dear friend, have you ever seen and experienced in your life that a real big idiot of a man, who can hardly speak and can even much less write, count and draw, is capable of making a plan from which under his personal supervision a royal castle can be build that would surprise everyone?

[7] You say within yourself: ‘No, the master builder must be well equipped with all knowledge for that, because without this he is impossibly capable to build such big royal castle.’

[8] Look friend, from this you must conclude that a human being or God who is capable of building a royal castle can be impossibly more stupid than the stupid I mentioned.

[9] Such big royal castle is of course an amazing task which is very honorable for its master, but do you not think that for the construction of a whole world like the Earth, considerably more wisdom and power is needed than for the construction of a majestic, artful royal castle?

[10] Now again you say within yourself: ‘Sure, but no matter how this power is called that created a whole world like the Earth with everything on it, above it and in it, it must have existed – and still must exist – being fully aware of its creative power and deep knowledge, for if it would not exist, its work, as well as man’s work, would all too soon become a complete ruin.’

[11] But if this creative Power, in the full possession of His great wisdom, was able to create such great work, He probably was not less wise when creating the apparent little works of such celestial body. Or have you perhaps already seen that something, being dead in itself and non-existent, can create life out of itself?

[12] You say: ‘No, this is unthinkable and even impossible on logical grounds.’

[13] Good – I say to you – do you perhaps think that less is needed to bring the smallest worm into existence and give it life than a

whole Earth, the moon and the sun?

[14] I say to you: if you can bring the simplest little worm into existence, then you can also bring a whole Earth, the moon and the sun and also the other stars into existence. Because the visible, physical living machine of even the most insignificant little worm is in its organic structure so artful that you cannot imagine in the least. And if this outer living machine would not be so artfully and wisely arranged, then how could one put a substantial little soul into it and let him then use this living machine for his further development?

[15] And if the One who brought this little worm into existence, would not be a perfect Lord over all powers and all life Himself, then how could He bring this machine to life? And apart of being a Lord over all powers and all life He simply will also have to be eternal life Himself. If not, how could He bring that little worm to life?

53. THE ACTIVE POWERS



Do you ever see in your life an active power?

[2] You say: 'Absolutely not. The action of the powers can always be perceived and felt but no one was ever able to really see them. We can see storms and hurricanes with great violent effect, but what power and violence are, we do not know. Also, a certain power must attract us men to the surface of the Earth, otherwise we would be able to lift up ourselves freely in the air whenever we wanted, which is however not the case as daily experience teaches us. This power works continuously but no human eye has ever seen what it looks like and how it works.'

[3] Good, now I ask you further: have you ever seen a transporter who brings the light from the sun to this Earth? Or did you ever see the connection with which the celestial bodies are connected with each other in such a way that they continually have to move at the same distance around their bigger celestial bodies? Or did you ever see those powers which are active in the plants as well as in

the animals, producing all kinds of things?

[4] Look, all these things are very strange to you. Simple questions which you, beside your philosophy of justice, could have asked to yourself a long time ago and to which you might have received a much wiser answer than to your philosophic, critical clever *questions of justice*.

[5] Look, for various reasons no ever so artfully constructed living machine can be created for an eternally long existence, because creating such lasting material living machines would mean for the Creator to infinitely divide Himself into many parts, become gradually weaker and make Himself unsuitable for further creation.

[6] But if He creates a living machine with the only purpose to make a spark of His initial life stronger and firmer, reaching an individual godly freedom and independence, and when it then will lay off the living machine to, through the love and wisdom in it, completely unite itself by that, in that case, not only nothing will be lost of the initial creative fundamental life, but the Creator and the creation will win by that infinitely much more, which can of course not be understood by you now.

[7] But when you will be reborn in your soul in the true Spirit of God it will become clear to you how the Love of God will become more and more powerful in itself by the love of His children for Him, as well as the love of God in the children.

[8] God was a pure and perfect Spirit since eternity, and He therefore can have no other will than that in the course of time all His creatures will become again what He is Himself through ways provided by the Creator. This with the only difference that they – before they were in a certain way called into a material existence – were nothing else than only big thoughts and ideas of the Creator. He then – with the power of His will and in the course of very long times – placed these, as if existing on their own, outside of Himself and gave them a covering in which they gradually should see and come to know themselves more and more, and in which they should let their sense of independence and freedom grow by My always penetrating power.

[9] Friend, if that seed would also not be within you – which you as an outer sensorial person can of course not know – you would not have criticized the Creator, for it was only the indestructible sense of life in you that unconsciously urged you. And I especially came to this region for your sake in order to show you in word and deed how far and how low you still are behind the pillar of life and light. We have used enough words on both sides for now, and for your sake we will also proceed to a few facts.

54. THE LIFE IN THE BEYOND. THE INNER SPIRITUAL SIGHT.



YOU claimed that one cannot communicate with people who died. But you are very wrong in this.

[2] For people like you this is indeed hardly possible, because they are too worldly developed from the beginning. They have sharpened their natural sense of sight and understanding but by that they put their inner spiritual sight in the background. Their inner sight is somewhat like when someone put glass windows in his house. But he is outside and suddenly hears a loud noise in the house. So he immediately goes to a window and wants to see inside the house, but despite all his efforts he hardly sees anything because the reflection of the daylight on the windows makes it impossible. So if he wants to know the cause of the noise he must open the front door of the house and all the doors in between and go inside to see what caused the noise. Or he must pierce a window and, if one is not enough, pierce more of them in order to better look inside and see what caused the noise.

[3] Regarding that landlord, if he would have been in the house instead of outside at the moment that he heard the noise, then he would have discovered the cause sooner and easier, but since he was outside, he could not be present at the moment that the noise occurred but only later, and in every respect less efficiently because the cause and the result were already gone. He then would have had to search with great effort and for a long time in all

corners inside the house and finally find a broken dish from which he then would conclude that it fell on the ground by some movement from above, *that it* broke and caused the noise. But he nevertheless cannot be completely sure of what he suspects because the broken dish could also have been broken before. That is why, in spite of all this, his assumption is not sure but only a guess. And all this because of the fact that he was not inside but outside the house at the moment that he heard the noise.

[4] Look, with this image I want to bring to your attention that a human being who is only outwardly intellectually developed cannot hear or understand anything or only very little and unclearly of what happens within him spiritually.

[5] The body is the house of the soul, and the spirit in him is added to it by God, so that it will teach and awaken the soul in everything that is spiritual and to also make it possible to come in contact with it.

[6] But how can the spirit do that when the soul, being in full possession of his free will, is mostly outside of the house and refreshes and quenches himself at the worldly light? By that he becomes so blinded and sleepy that he sees and perceives nothing anymore of what goes on in his house.

[7] In time, when he is urged to it, he is willing to look around in his house and he becomes very worried about it. He sees that there are already deficiencies at some places, wants to fix it and make it durable, and then he finally unites himself with the matter of his inner and outer dwelling house.

[8] Then in his house he searches for the spirit that now and then wants to call him into the house by making noise, but often he does not hear the noise because of the worldly commotion. He now and then takes a quick look inside his house in which he however can only see few and unreliable things. After such small investigation he soon goes outside again where he likes it better than in the dark rooms of his house in which he saw nothing clear anymore because his eyesight was too much blinded by the outer light, and his inner hearing was too deafened because of the hard

worldly commotion.

[9] However, at some places there are fearful souls, just like children, who are afraid for the worldly light and the worldly commotion. These prefer to stay at home and keep themselves busy with what they can find in the house. When they hear a noise, they can very easily look from the inside to the outside through a window that is not blinded by an outer light, and they can quickly and easily come to know what caused the noise. And they can more correctly and sooner become aware of many things that also happen in the house compared to those who are outside the house.

[10] Thus, the spiritual ability to see and to hear is always in man and never outside in his worldly sense organs. So if you wish to speak with some soul and want to see him, it can only be accomplished within yourself, but never outside of yourself.

[11] If you would have stayed more at home you already would have had the same life experiences as many others who told you about it but whose story you always declared to be a light belief of self-deceit. By that you stayed more and more outside of your house, and only at rare moments you took a quick look into it. By that you always became more and more irritated, because as a result of the blinding of your inner sight by the light of the outer worldly reason, your ability to distinguish what happened in your house of life became less and worse. And you punished yourself because with your outer worldly light you considered, and still consider, the eternal death and the eternal non-existence as the greatest blessing for a being that was called into a self-aware existence.

[12] But look, I as a true Lord of life have the ability to put you back in yourself and to strengthen your inner sight for a few moments, and then you immediately will be able to be convinced of the condition of the soul after the dead of his body.

[13] Tell Me whom you wish to see now and speak to from your former times. Then that person will come immediately and speak to you and answer your questions, and you will also recognize him as the one whom you have known during his life.”

55. APPEARANCE OF A SPIRIT



HE supreme judicial city officer said: “Then let me see and speak to my father who died already 12 years ago and whom I greatly mourned because he was a very dear and righteous father to me.”

[2] **I said to the supreme city officer:** “It will happen according to your wish.”

[3] **And look, at that same moment, the father of the supreme judicial city officer stood in the guestroom, visible for all those who were present.**

[4] **His son recognized him immediately and said to him:** “So you really continue to live after the dead of your body?”

[5] **The father said:** “Now you believe it because I was forced to appear to you in this way by the power of Him who is with you, and you can see me now because He opened your inner sight. Why did you not believe your mother who is still living, and your 3 sisters who saw me and spoke to me shortly after my departure? At that occasion I revealed to them briefly that the life of the soul after the dead of the body is quite different of no matter what people think in this short earthly life.

[6] The worst in this short time of life is for those who do not believe at all that the soul survives after the falling away of the body, because in the beyond, for a very long time, they still keep the belief which they took along from here and they still expect the eternal extinction which will and can however never come.

[7] The result of their wrong belief is also that they are lazy and slow to undertake something for their progress in the beyond. And so they live in the beyond – as I have heard – often a couple of thousand years, and they do not let themselves be dissuaded from their senseless belief by even the lightest spirits. So beware my son that you will not separate from the world with such wrong belief.”

[8] **Then the supreme judicial city officer said:** “Truly, father, it is you. For you spoke the same words to me as to mother and my

sisters. I wrote them down and I am still keeping them as something holy, although I did not really believe in them up till now. I also wanted to see and speak to you myself, but I was not that lucky.”

[9] **On this, the father said to him:** “How could this be possible? Because no matter how often I came to you, you were never at home and you were always busy in the outer world and its light, and there it is impossible for us to appear to someone and teach him, because the way we are now, we are no more the appearance accomplished by another power, and so we are the power itself which is innerly active in all elements. Even though sensorial man can see those elements, but the active power, which is the actual true being in himself, can as little be seen by an outer person like you as no matter what other power that is active in the material world, unless he would return into himself in his true being and would by that open up his inner sight. And then he will also perceive the true being of the active powers, see them in their true being and also be able to contact them.”

56. EXPERIENCES IN THE BEYOND



IN this, the supreme judicial city officer asked his father: “Then where is the place you are staying and what does it look like?”

[2] **The father said:** “In our realm there is certainly no place of which one could say: ‘Look this is it, or there, and this is what it looks like, and this is the way it is arranged’, for with us, everyone is the place himself where he lives, and the scene and characteristics of that place correspond in every respect to the inner characteristics of the person.

[3] According to an earthly calculation I am already quite some time on the other side and should have seen and experienced special things, but until now I did not see something that somehow corresponds with what this world believed, thought and invented

about the world of the beyond. I searched for the river Styx¹ and the skipper Charon² and found neither of them. For some time I also had a Tartarus³-fear of a fury and of the 3 relentless judges Minos⁴, Aeacus⁵ and Rhadamanthus⁶, but nothing of all that. I searched for the Elysium⁷, traveled around far and wide as if through a big sandy plain, and look, no Elysium could be found. In short, I did not see or found anything or no one except myself and the very loose ground on which I stood.

[4] After searching for – according to an earthly calculation – about 2 years, during which I searched in all directions through that endless sandy plain, I finally saw someone at a great distance who seemed to be in exactly the same condition as I was. I quickly walked to that person and was soon close to Him.

[5] When I came to Him, I immediately asked Him: ‘You seem to be in the same condition as I am. Nothing but a sandy plain under our feet, and it seems that there is no end to it. A haze above our heads which is more dark than light gray, and besides that, we only can see ourselves and our footsteps in the sand. Also, there is no wind, and certainly no water or another object. According to an earthly calculation I am wandering around for about 2 years in this sandy desert and cannot find anything with which to satiate myself or to quench a possible thirst. I know that I left what was temporal and wander around as a real poor soul in this desert, which is truly very unpleasant to me. I really tried in this apparently spirit or soul world to seek and discover everything in which I partly believed in the world, but nothing of all that.

[6] After 2 years You are now the first appearance who are like me. Maybe You can tell me what can be done here and what can

¹ Styx: main river of the underworld in Greek mythology.

² Charon: a son of Erebus who ferries the souls of the dead over the Styx.

³ Tartarus: a section of Hades reserved for punishment of the wicked.

⁴ Minos: supreme judge in the underworld after his death.

⁵ Aeacus: a son of Zeus who became on his death a judge of the underworld.

⁶ Rhadamanthus: a judge of the underworld.

⁷ Elysium: the abode of the blessed after death in classical mythology.

be undertaken to finally find a place that is more or less bearable, for I am tired of searching in this vast sandy plain and I do not like to make any more step forward or backward?’

[7] Then the person, who seemed to be like me and in the same condition as I was, said: ‘Yes, my fiend, there are numberless people like you in this realm who searched for many centuries for what you are searching. If you want to find something here, you should not do it in the same way as in the material world where one searches everything only outside of himself. The one who will do that here will eternally not find anything, for there is no other place or region here except himself, even if he would search it in all places of endless space.

[8] So you should return into yourself with your thoughts, with your striving and willing and begin to search, to think and to form yourself. Only then will you find a place that corresponds to your thinking, forming, willing and your love. So behave as if you do not see this sandy plain and this gray haze above you, but go into the fantasy of your inner mind, then soon everything will come into another form for you. I let myself be found by you to tell you this.’

[9] After these words, that person suddenly left me *and let me* standing on my sandy plain again. I took his words to heart and went into myself and began to think very lively, and as well as I could I drew in my fantasy a region and a place, and see, it did not take long to see my fantasy actually stretched out before me.

[10] It was a valley through which a brook was flowing. Left and right were pastures and also trees and bushes, and at a certain distance I also discovered a village made from simple huts of farmers, and I had the feeling that I should go to that village.

[11] But I thought by myself: ‘If I will walk again, I finally will lose everything again that I created for myself with difficulty. Instead of that, I just will try to form such hut near this place. Then I very gladly will forever live in it and keep it.

[12] I imagined something like that, and soon there was the hut, surrounded by a garden full of fruit trees with which I was

completely satisfied.

[13] I entered the hut to see in a certain way into myself what else there would be. Coming into the hut I saw that it was completely empty, and went even deeper into myself and thought about things upon which soon all kinds of objects appeared into that hut: chairs, benches, tables and also a resting bed, completely as I had thought.

[14] And I further thought: ‘The table is there now but there is no bread, wine or other food on it.’

[15] While I was intensively thinking about it, there was already the bread and the wine on the table in sufficient quantity. When I looked at it I did not hesitate very long, grabbed quickly the bread and also the wine, for I was already very hungry and thirsty. And look, soon after that, I felt greatly strengthened, and my thinking and fantasy was much more lively and stronger.

57. GUIDANCE IN THE BEYOND



WHEN I walked out of my hut and saw that everything was like before. Then I thought by myself: ‘All this is very good but I nevertheless am and stay alone. If I only could wish that former friend to come to me to express my thanks to Him for the good advice he gave me’, and at that wish I looked into the direction of that faraway village that I mentioned before and saw that soon several men from that village came into my direction.

[2] They soon were close by, and among them I at once recognized also that friend who had given me that good advice in the sandy desert before, and He said to me: ‘Awaken now in you a sincere feeling of love, compassion, mercy and charity. Then soon several men will come to you who are in the same condition as you were before. Then share your bread of life and your wine of life with them, and they soon will become happier and will be your neighbors. But the one, who does not want to accept anything from you, let him go his way to find a place and a housing according to his wish. Then will happen to him as happened to you when you were searching. But you, continue to grow in love, mercy and in

the living desire to do good to the poor blind ones as you are able. By that, you yourself will become richer and by that also happier.’

[3] Then those who visited me in my loneliness returned, and again I followed the further advice of my still unknown friend. And look, soon a big group of poor souls came to me, and I asked them if they saw or noticed anything.

[4] They answered: ‘Up till now only an endless sandy plain under our feet and a gray haze above us.’

[5] I went into my hut and brought them bread and wine.

[6] A few of them saw the bread and the wine immediately when I said to them: ‘Here you have bread and wine. Strengthen yourselves.’

[7] But many others did not see it, because they thought that I intentionally wanted to play a joke on them, and they continued their way.

[8] However, those who took the bread and the wine saw also immediately my hut and the very beautiful landscape, and they stayed with me. I taught them in the manner as I had been taught myself, and soon my former lonely hut was surrounded by a big number of other huts that were well arranged. And so I found and acquired my first village and my first company, and I stayed there till I extended my inner being more and more by the love for my neighbor.

[9] Soon after this extension, also the environment extended itself, became more lively and more beautiful, and I became happier and more enlightened in it, and the more the inner light in me extended itself and imagined something, it was also right there.

[10] In that condition I also began to think about my relatives whom I left behind in the world to tell them about my ideas, especially that an indestructible life of the soul exists after the falling away of the body.

[11] And look, soon after that, your mother and a few sisters came to me, and I could talk to them, just like to you now. They believed my words and they also told you, but there was no belief in you until now because you went too much into the hard and dead outer

world with your whole thinking, loving and willing.

[12] I finally want to make the remark that this good friend, who was the first in the desert to give me that good advice, looks, for what His facial features are concerned, very much like this Lord next to whom you are sitting, and at His first glance I felt within myself the light idea that He is Lord of this and also of our world. As I am speaking to you now, it is not as if I am speaking from another place, but only from the place where I live. From this you can conclude that it is not necessary for me to leave the place where I am living in order to associate with someone in this world, but where I am and speak, the place is also with me.

[13] Apart from that, I also want to draw your attention that you, for what your soul is concerned, are now also traveling around in the outer world on merely sand. And above you, that means in your mind, you have nothing else but a dark gray haze.

[14] But this Earth, and what you see on it and above it, is only a place that is created by the highest Spirit, just as my village was created out of me on a small scale.

[15] The love of the great Spirit, His extremely clear thoughts of light, His almighty will and His great mercy are the initial elements from which He forms and also maintains such wonderful places as long as He wants. So in this world you can see nothing else except that kind of place that came in a certain order into existence from the great Spirit. But it only remains visible to your soul as something that exists as long as your soul is covered with matter.

[16] When that covering will be taken away from you, you will be without a place, without any solid ground and without a certain light above you, except if you found the way to your inner being already in this world. Then of course it will be different in the beyond, because then everything, the place and what you need, will go with you to the beyond and you will not have to be informed by a friend as to how to obtain a habitation and company here with us. Remember that, my son.”

[17] **Now the son still wanted to talk further with his father.**

[18] **However, he said before leaving (the father):** “For all the other things that you still want to know you should turn into your heart to the One who sits next to you, for He knows all things, in this world and in ours.”

[19] **After these words, the spirit disappeared.**

58. QUESTIONS ABOUT HELL AND ITS SPIRITS



OW I turned to the supreme judicial city officer and said: “Was that the spirit of your father or not?”

[2] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “Great Lord and Master, it was as much him as I am his earthly son, and he could not have been a phantom of my imagination because such phantom cannot speak so wisely with me, especially about things that are as strange to me as the things under *the surface of our Earth*. From now on I entirely believe in the indestructible survival of the soul after the falling away of his body.

[3] But one thing was strange to me, namely that my father, as long as he was there, did not meet any evil spirit of the gentiles, and still less some devil of the Jews. Nevertheless, it is said everywhere that the evil ones continue to exist in the beyond, and in their inextinguishable anger they are continuously busy to do evil. Then what do the places of these evil spirits look like? And why did my father in the beyond not see any of them yet?”

[4] **I said:** “Do not be a bit worried about that, or not at all. The evil spirits, who are called devils, are finally also returning into themselves, but there they will only find evil things, which is actually their love. Out of this, they also will create places for themselves that completely correspond to their inner character, and they gradually separate themselves into certain groups according to the degree of their evilness, and try to harm everyone. If they detect similar characters among the people on this Earth they soon find ways to approach them in almost the same manner as your father approached you. They then firstly take possession of the flesh and fill it with everything that one can only call bad and evil.

[5] They proceed softly in the beginning and try to pull the soul into the flesh. If this is done, the soul is already as good as lost for everything that is right, clean, good and true. And I Myself came in the flesh into this world to effectively put an end to this old mischief for the sake of all those who believe in Me and who will live and act according to My teaching. Look, I alone am the Lord over everything in the world and over everything in the realm of the spirits. Believe that, then you will live.”

[6] Then **the supreme judicial city officer** thanked Me for this teaching, but as an intelligent sharp critic he ended with the final question: “But Lord and Master, how were You able to look at such mischief without making an effective end to it already a very long time ago?”

[7] I said: “What you wish, was always done by Me, and it never happened that a somewhat good human being became lost. But humanity on this Earth was too immature for what is happening now, and even now they still are by far not ripe enough.

[8] But for the sake of the few good ones I took care of the world, and for them I want to establish a Kingdom in the beyond where they will be with Me and rule with Me eternally.

[9] In the big world in the beyond there are already numberless of better Jewish and gentile spirits like your father. When I soon will return to My eternal initial being, the right way to the perfect, eternal life will also be shown to all those better gentiles and Jews in the beyond. And all the evil souls will always have the freedom to better their life and to go on the way of the light or to remain in their evilness and let themselves be tormented by it forever, because for what they themselves want, no injustice happen to them.

[10] And so, in the beyond, the reward for the good ones will be good, but bad for the bad ones. Everyone will be in his youngest day after the laying off of his body, and I will awaken everyone and give him the reward out of himself as he was, good or bad.

[11] With this, the questions that you asked Me were more than sufficiently answered, and if I would answer you more profoundly,

you would not understand it anyway because you all are – as far as your soul is concerned – still children, and you are not yet able to take solid, manly food. That is why you first must be nourished with milk, but when you will have become strong by that food, you also will be able to take stronger food from Heaven.”

59. THE IDOL IMAGES IN THE HOUSE OF THE INNKEEPER



IN these words of Mine, they all began to highly praise Me, even My apostles, and they said: “Now, o Lord, You have spoken very clearly and understandable again about hidden things, and we received a real light about the survival of the soul after the dead of the body and how things are over there. Everything that is and exists in this manner can only be placed into a clear light by You, o Lord, and for this we give You thanks from the deepest of our heart, spoken out loudly and sincerely.”

[2] **On this, I said:** “Eat and drink now the things that are still on the table. After that we will go to rest and see what the day of tomorrow will bring us.”

[3] **Then they all ate and drank and talked much with each other about Me. However, I did not eat or drink anything anymore and rested in a way from the tiredness of the day. Close to midnight, also all the others became sleepy, and the supreme judicial city officer, the Pharisees and the Jews went to their houses. I stayed however as usual with My disciples the whole night sitting at the table.**

[4] **When the supreme judicial city officer left, he told the innkeeper that he absolutely should not ask any payment from us, for he himself would pay the bill for everyone.**

[5] **The innkeeper said:** “Sir, supreme judicial city officer, you easily can command me on this point, because for what concerns this bill I am the only debtor, and all the guests are my creditors, for if they would charge me what they did for me, then I should have to pay a big amount to them. So do not worry, for at this occasion I am not an innkeeper but a human being and just like

you a real friend of all that is good, true and exceptional. We will see each other again tomorrow.”

[6] Then they said goodbye, and also our innkeeper went to rest, but before he fell asleep, he still talked a lot with his wife and children about the appearance of the past evening.

[7] But his wife and children were still real gentiles throughout, and their bedroom was completely filled with Roman and Greek images wherever there was a free space. Some were made of wood, others of stone and again others of metal.

[8] **The innkeeper** said to her: “Listen, good and loyal woman, now that we had the chance to know the real, one and only true God – physically and personally – we will take these idol images in the morning and destroy them all together, for they never were useful to us and in the future they will be even less useful to us.

[9] When the innkeeper had said that to his wife, she first did not want to agree, but **his oldest son**, who was a freethinker, said aloud: “Father, this is what I already wanted to do together with you for a long time, but the belief of the women here is as stubborn as stone, and you cannot talk any sense into them, although they should realize that all those idols are firstly nothing else but dead matter, and secondly they are made so badly and miserably that they are directly an offence against the human artistic sense, because such Diana from Ephesus does not look any different from a dried frog, and that Jupiter could represent anything.

[10] I still could bear those figures if they were products of real artists, but these figures, that decorate mother’s room, are mostly products of Greek shepherds. Apart from keeping watch over their cattle, they make such figures of wood, loam, soft stone or lead. Then they let them be sanctified by the priests and finally fill them into big crates to give them, in return for a scandalous price, to certain image sellers who sell them further. Then they come into our regions, and our women have in their stupid piety enough money to buy this miserable junk from the businessmen. And the kitchen suffers from it because everything must be put on the table more scarcely and badly, and then the foreign guests have really no

reason to thank for a good and abundant service. Therefore, it is better to have more fat and oil on the table for the guests than to have so many foolish and ridiculous idols in the bedroom.

[11] In a corner of the guestroom stands a half life-sized Apollo that is already so black and dirty that it must be disgusting for an honest man to look at it. I already noticed it for a long time and tomorrow I will clear up that miserable figure.”

[12] **His mother, halfly shocked about the intention of her son, said:** “Yes, yes, just be careful that the priest of Apollo will not see you and then will punish you as profaner.”

[13] **The son said:** “I am no more afraid of him at all, because the One who provided us miraculously with wine and fishes and who was also able to suddenly put down 14 fierce lions before the Jews and their priests who wanted to hinder Him to enter the city, and which I saw with my own eyes, will also be able to protect me against the more than stupid Apollo-priest, and this all the more since our supreme judicial city officer is no friend of our gods and their priests.

[14] And that priest of ours is also intellectually as stupid as can be and cannot relate about anything else except about old, already more than a thousand times hackneyed fables of the gods. Besides that, he stuffs himself like a wolf and boozes like an ox, especially when he can get wine from somewhere. This is his apollonian wisdom. Should I be afraid and have respect for such person? Truly, then I will be ashamed to be a human being myself, and moreover a Roman.”

[15] **The innkeeper, who was very satisfied about his son, said:** “Be calm now. We will see tomorrow about what can be done. We now will leave everything up to Him who is resting today in our house. He will take care of everything.”

[16] **Then it became quiet in the bedroom of the innkeeper till the morning. The innkeeper was one of the first to be awake, and he immediately came to us in the guestroom.**

60. ON THE MOUNTAIN NEBO



SINCE he saw that I was awake, he asked Me directly with all love and respect what I would need for the morning and if I needed fragrant water for washing.

[2] I said: “Do not trouble yourself, for if I wanted to wash Myself, I can have sufficiently fresh water everywhere. But nearby this city there is a mountain that is famous from the time of the prophet Moses, and I want to climb it before sunrise. In the old Hebrew language it is called ‘Nebo’, but you call it ‘Mons Mosis’¹. So do not order to prepare the morning meal too soon, for I want to stay there for about 3 hours.”

[3] **The innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, everything will be done precisely according to Your will, but allow also me and my oldest son to visit with You this mountain, which is especially memorable to the Jews, for it is not far from here at all. We can easily reach the very top in a little half hour.”

[4] I allowed this to the innkeeper, and he went to give instructions to his wife and the other children as to how they should take care of the kitchen.

[5] When he came back, the disciples were also awake, and also the supreme judicial city officer and the 2 Pharisees Dismas and Barnabas stood already at the door of the inn and wanted to come in. Also I was already at the door with My followers, the innkeeper and his son to climb the Mountain of Moses.

[6] The supreme judicial city officer and the 2 mentioned Pharisees asked Me very kindly if they could accompany Me. We immediately went on our way and a little half hour later we reached already the top of the mountain where the supreme judicial city officer had placed benches to sit there for his enjoyment. Those were mostly made of basalt blocks but were very suitable for that purpose. On the very spacious tableland he moreover had planted rosebushes and other nice-smelling little trees, and so it

¹ Latin for ‘Mountain of Moses’.

was very pleasant before sunrise to be on that hill, which was easy to climb from our side of the city, and to wait there for the sun to rise.

[7] Looking from this side of the city, the mountain was hardly more than 100 ell¹ high, but towards the Jordan Valley it had a very steep descend of a little more than 2,000 ell², and so from the Jordan Valley it looked like a high mountain, but from the east it was only a hill, and there were more of such hills along the Hauran region.

[8] We were now on the hill or Mountain of Moses and viewed the vast plains of the Euphrates and the desert that was completely clear as far as the eye could reach.

[9] Towards the south it was also clear, and one could see the famous mountains from the Bible, like the Hor where Moses, sustained by Aaron and his son Eleazer, had to pray for the victory of the Israelites against the hostile Amalekites. When he let his hands down, the Amalekites were winning. When he raised his hands again, the Israelites were winning. Also the mountain Hur could be seen where Aaron died, and further in the deep background also the tops of the high Sinai could be seen and its closest neighbor the Horeb.

[10] But to the west it was very hazy. Only at some places the high peaks of the Lebanon stuck out above the haze, and of the mountains in the north the top of the Hermon could be seen from where the Jordan begins.

[11] Nothing was visible in the Jordan valley because of the haze. This was very regrettable to the supreme judicial city officer, after which I made the remark to him that he should be patient for a couple of hours. The sun would drive away the haze and would also clear up this region of the Jordan of the bad fumes. "But now we will not look to that region, but to the one of the east."

[12] Now the Pharisee **Dismas** said to me: "O Lord and Master,

¹ About 70 m (1 ell = about 70 cm).

² About 1,400 meter

the mountain on which we are standing now, is it the same as on which the great prophet Moses arose to Heaven as a flame of light and disappeared before the eyes of those who accompanied him, leaving his body behind, after which – as the Scripture says – on the one side the archangel Michael appeared and on the other side Satan as chief of the devils who fought for as long as 3 days with the archangel for the body of Moses, and on top of that, he also was victorious over the archangel and disappeared with the dead body of Moses?

[13] Up to now the whole of our Jewish wisdom kept and still keeps quiet about this and they do not tell us why this happened. And even the many great prophets did not give us any explanation about this. Our cabalists¹ have therefore declared the whole matter apocryphal and consider it as a fable, but many old Arabian tribes say that it is true. What do You, o Lord, have to say about this?”

[14] **Now the supreme judicial city officer said in My place:** “But what difference does it make when the spirit of Moses is living among you and is saved anyway? Because the body is only a covering of the human spirit and it is not that important whether Satan or another spirit pulled it to him. If I had been in the place of the archangel I would have given Satan that pleasure sooner if he was that hungry for the dead body of Moses.”

[15] **On this, I said to the Pharisees:** “The supreme judicial city officer gave you a very good answer, for I, the Lord of all life, gave another body to Moses already a long time ago instead of his sinful flesh. And Satan would have had no power over his flesh if Moses had never sinned in his former time in his flesh. But since he also sinned for what concerns his flesh – although his soul and his spirit purely originated from the Heavens – Satan wanted to take possession of what was his from Moses. But with that, he did not gain anything but rather lost almost everything for what concerns his power, and from that moment on he was no more allowed to appear before any mortal human being on the whole Earth, which

¹ Cabalist: a student, interpreter, or devotee of the Jewish cabala (Jewish theosophy).

was very harmful for his influence because from that time on many gentiles turned to the teaching of Moses, and the great oracle in Dodona¹ – a very important work of Satan to seduce the people on this Earth – was destroyed and it was not allowed to be rebuild. Also the oracle in Delphi, that existed much earlier, fell soon after the fall of a city *called* Troy, and later on it was never completely rebuild. But let us now not further occupy ourselves with these things, for they have no value for the inner man.

[16] It is better to know the one and only true God, to love Him above all and his fellowman as oneself.

[17] Now the sun will immediately come up, and then you will see many things that will surprise you.”

61. THE REMARKABLE SUNRISE



At that same moment a sun could already be seen, quite high above the horizon, and looking exactly like the real sun.

[2] The **supreme judicial city officer** asked Me: “Lord and Master, how could the sun have risen so fast above the horizon? We saw it only when it was already quite high above us while we cannot see any clouds that could have hindered us to see the sun at the moment it rose.”

[3] I said: “This is not a real sun but a reflection of the sun that is still under the horizon and visible in the mirror of a layer of the atmosphere that became completely at rest. But that sun will soon disappear when the real one will come up.

[4] Look, this image of the sun looks like the natural light of man’s reason that will also soon disappear when in Me the true sun of life will rise for them and which has already risen for a small part.”

[5] On this, the Pharisee **Dismas** said: “I am of the opinion that our sun that is shining now is even more deceitful than this false sun in the east, and I do not want to be a bad prophet but I nevertheless

¹ Ancient sanctuary in Greece where the ‘earth mother’ was worshipped.

say: for us the false sun will also soon disappear and the real sun of the spirit and life will rise for the gentiles.”

[6] I said: “Yes, you are right in this, as it is also written that I will take away My light from the Jews and give it to the gentiles.

[7] Therefore, I say to you that I then also will abolish the Old Covenant and the Old Testament, and will establish a new one for the Jews as well as for all people on Earth according to the order of Melchisedech who was a King of all kings and a Supreme Priest of all supreme priests. That is why all kings and patriarchs had to give the tithe – even Abraham was not excluded.

[8] And that Melchisedech was I, from the time of Noah till much after Abraham with whom the Covenant was concluded by the great promise that was made to him. And now I am here again as the same. But not to confirm and maintain the Old Covenant, but to make a New Covenant with all people, and then I also will remain King and Lord and Supreme Priest forever, entirely according to the order of Melchisedech.

[9] The old supreme priests had to sacrifice the blood of animals for the redemption of their sins, but that was only a representation of what soon will happen in another way. Because the old supreme priests had also to sacrifice for their sins, and then for the sins of the people, but they nevertheless remained in their sins, otherwise I would not have let My people for 40 full years in all possible affliction in the desert.

[10] Aaron and Moses offered every year according to the precepts, but this was no use to them, neither to the people who persevered in their sins. But I will now offer Myself only once for everyone, and those who will believe in Me will be justified and clean to Me, and no more sin will be found on them. And now you know what you can expect from Me.

[11] Moses still had to see, feel and taste death on this mountain. And on the place where I am sitting now, he called out in his last moments: ‘Lord, You made a Covenant with us against death and against sin, and see, I must die here without being allowed to walk on the Promised Land of Life with my feet.’

[12] And a voice sounded above him: ‘You will live, but not from the law of the old, but from the mercy of My New Covenant that I will establish with the people of the Earth.’

[13] And Moses was dissolved and taken up, not because of his merit but by My mercy.

[14] And now on this place I say to you, Jews and gentiles, that already now I have made, and will make even more, a New Covenant with you, which you will all experience in a very short time. The upcoming sun will give you a witness about Me that I did not tell you vain words from Myself.”

[15] At that moment, the sun came up, and above it stood written in illuminated letters: ‘Honor and praise to the one, only true God in the height of all heights and in the deep of all depths.’ And under the sun: ‘Melchisedech, the true King of kings and Supreme Priest of all supreme priests, the only true Father of His children in Heaven and on this Earth.’

62. THE DEGENERATION OF THE JEWISH TEACHING



HEN all those present read this very meaningful inscription, they were very surprised and amazed, especially the 3 Romans and the few Pharisees.

[2] For **several Pharisees** had followed Dismas and Barnabas, and **these** said: “Yes, yes, it is wonderful to see what is written there. The Old Covenant with Abraham is finished and is no more valid and is not effective anymore, for we all know that the effect of the Ark of the Covenant has practically stopped for almost 30 years. Only Simon and Zachariah have known its usual power. The staff of Aaron did not become green anymore and the 7 show breads were gnawed away to dust by the moths. Only the 2 stone tables are still left, but what was written upon it became every year more and more difficult to read, and therefore it was necessary to destroy the whole Ark of the Covenant already 20 years ago, except for the gold and the 2 big cherubs. And instead of that, a new one was made of the same wood by one of the first and best carpenters.

And it was covered with gold, and the 2 cherubs were put on it again according to the form of the old one, and in the middle of the Ark a column of smoke rose up – or from time to time also a column of fire. The Ark had to be arranged in such a way that ignited coals could be put in it and incense and good smelling resin be placed upon it to form in this way a pillar of smoke, but *this was* filling the whole space of the Most Holy Place in all directions, so such so that it was hardly bearable there. And the pillar of fire had to be ignited with naphtha.

[3] The high priest of that time thought however that the newly constructed Ark would have the same effect as the newly build temple after the Babylonian captivity, but he was greatly mistaken, for the new Ark had no more effect at all. That is why the later high priests did not care to let the Most Holy Place of the new Ark of Covenant be visited, after payment of an imposed offering, by the Romans and Greeks, just like any other place, for no harm was done to those who came near the new Ark of the Covenant.

[4] For us Pharisees and scribes it was then also clear for a long time that the Old Covenant was completely finished. But we still have to keep the people in the old belief as long as possible, especially because we cannot replace it with a better belief for the people, and secondly to take care that the temple and its servants will continue to receive their income, without which neither the temple nor its servants could survive.

[5] And this is also the most important reason why this Lord and Master, whom we know now as the only true establisher of an eternal, new Covenant, was so much hated by the temple servants, because the temple servants could see that His teaching is full of divine power, but they also knew all too well that they would be completely finished as soon as they themselves would follow that new teaching and let it be completely accepted by the people.

[6] But this will be of little benefit to them in the future – which they well realize – because many from the people already know that the old Ark of the Covenant lost its power, and that the new one has no other power than what it receives from the clumsy art

of men.

[7] We, who are still connected to the temple ourselves, cannot do anything for or against it, but we want to wait with blissful hope what this only true Lord of Heaven and Earth will do, and in the future we will persevere in the full faith in Him and in all love for Him. We are all deeply convinced that He will take the best and most effective measures.”

[8] **After these words, the supreme judicial city officer said:** “I was also one of those who saw the new Ark of the Covenant in the temple, and by that I was convinced that the faith of the Jews in God is as useless as the faith of the gentiles in the idols. But the gentiles are more skilful in all kinds of magic and can successfully fool the blind people for a longer time, but that column of smoke and fire in the Most Holy Place in the temple in Jerusalem is badly done, and the priests in the temple take good care of themselves by making the blind people believe that the old Ark of the Covenant of Moses is still entirely effective. But once the people will come to know that this is no more the case for already a long time, then the priests in Jerusalem can better hurry to leave, otherwise they will not experience their best days with the people.”

[9] **Then he turned to Me and said:** “Lord and Master, You who gave us now more than sufficient very clear proofs of Your divinity, tell me if what I said is right or not?”

[10] **I said:** “Completely right, for no deceit can hold on for a long time, neither the night once the sun has risen.

[11] **You can be very sure that the temple with its servants and the whole city of Jerusalem will in the youngest time be completely and for all time of times destroyed. Not one stone will remain upon the other. The Jews in Jerusalem can pray for only one thing, namely that their big flight will not come in the middle of the winter or on a Sabbath, because then it would be much more pitiful than in a better season or on a working day.”**

[12] **When I had said that, the scriptures above and under the sun disappeared, and the hazes in the Jordan valley were dissolving because the rays of the sun shone on the regions of the Promised**

Land.

[13] **The supreme judicial city officer** made the remark: “It is a pity that the inhabitants of Jerusalem were not able to see the sun and the words above and under it, for this really should have made them wonder about such phenomenon.”

[14] **But I** said: “Just for the purpose that they would not see it I allowed that all the regions of the Jordan be covered with a thick haze, because those who rejoice about the darkness should also receive their reward from it.”

[15] On this occasion we saw a fleeing gazelle that was chased by a jackal. In a short time the jackal overtook the gazelle and provided itself with a morning meal, and at about 500 paces away from us, it did not take long before it completely finished the captured morning meal. Then it went very slowly further to the south to possibly capture also a midday meal.

[16] **But** quickly, quite high in the sky, an Arabian giant eagle saw the crawling jackal. As fast as an arrow it immediately let itself fall down upon it from its height, and despite its resistance it carried it high into the sky. Then it let it drop on a place that was very stony everywhere. This clearly meant the death of the jackal. The eagle came down quickly, convinced itself that the jackal was dead, grabbed it with its claws again and flew with it southwards to a favorable spot where the jackal and the gazelle that was eaten by it served the giant eagle for breakfast.

[17] **After this short scene, the supreme judicial city officer** said: “Lord and Master, this kind of scenes of eating one another among the animals, and the serious sicknesses that precede death of man were for me always an unwise and cruel sight while the arrangement by one or several gods should be considered wise. You surely will know why all this is and has to be so, but even with the best of will, people like us can hardly have a clear view about it.”

[18] **I** said: “This will become clear to you. After the morning meal there will be an opportunity to talk about it, but now we will see Moses for a while and also the angel who fought for his dead

body.”

[19] When I had said that, Moses and the archangel Michael stood before Me, bowed down before Me and glorified and praised My name. Then they disappeared, and we stood up and went to the city where the morning meal was already waiting for us.

63. THE HOUSEGODS IN THE INN ARE DESTROYED



WHEN we entered the guestroom of our innkeeper, we took place at the table, and the Pharisees and Jews at their table near to us. And immediately a good quantity of well-prepared fishes was put on the table, and bread and wine were added. We took the fishes and all the rest and ate them.

[2] After the morning meal we stayed sitting at the table, for I did not want to show us too much outside when it was not necessary because there were still many hard gentiles in this city who were very much attached to their temples and idols.

[3] Now the son of the innkeeper came to Me and told Me that his mother filled her whole bedroom with idol statues and that also in this dining room there was a very badly shaped Apollo which appearance has the opposite effect for everyone of what it had to represent and that he therefore would like this Apollo and also his mother's idols to be removed.

[4] **(The son):** “Because now that we came to know You, o Lord, these idols are of no use anymore for this house.”

[5] **I** said: “You have a good mind, My dear son, but if you yourself will put your hand to it, it can cause problems and much hostility from your still blind neighbors. But I will support you, and this Apollo and the other idols will immediately disappear. Go to the corner and see if you can still find an Apollo, and then you can go to the room of your mother, and there also you will find no more idols.”

[6] The young man stood up immediately and went to the corner where Apollo stood and did no more find any trace of it. Then he

went to the bedroom of his mother, and also the many hundreds of idols had disappeared. He rejoiced and immediately told his mother who was working in the kitchen. But she got scared and said to her son:

[7] **(The mother):** “My dear son, all this is very well but think about our neighbors. What will they say when they visit us and will no more find any idol statue in our whole house?”

[8] **The son:** “Then let me talk to them and I will tell them that the Lord and Master, who performed such great signs in our house, destroyed all your idols with one thought. Then they will not be able to say anything anymore. We moreover have our strict and righteous supreme judicial city officer on our side, and then the neighbors will wisely be careful to express their displeasure to him.”

[9] His mother was satisfied with that information. Then she came with her son into the guestroom to thank Me for miraculously relieving her of something to which she was not really attached anyway.

[10] **I** said to her: “Go to your bedroom and you will find something that you will like much more instead of your former idols.”

[11] Then she returned to her bedroom and looked around, and on the place where most of her idols had stood, she found a case made of black ebony wood and provided with lock and bolt. She opened the case and saw that it was full of Roman silver coins of great value.

[12] She quickly came back and told it in front of everyone, especially to her husband and her son.

[13] **And the innkeeper said:** “This is much more valuable for our business than all your former idol statues. Nevertheless, the greatest value is always the word which we received from this Lord and Master, and maybe we will receive more of these if we are worthy. So let us not touch your silver coins and ask the Lord and Master to provide our heart and mind of that kind of spiritual golden and silver coins which we soon will use in the other life.”

[14] Then the woman thanked Me, went back to her kitchen and her personnel and there she took care of all the things that had to be thought about and done for the whole day.

[15] Immediately after that, **the supreme judicial city officer said to Me:** “O more than great Lord and Master of eternity. Since You promised this morning on the mountain Nebo to answer 2 more questions that I have asked – one yesterday evening and the second one this morning on the mountain Nebo when a jackal chased a poor gazelle, tore it apart and devoured it, and soon after that it had to suffer the same fate by a giant eagle – be so kind to give me some more light.”

64. THE CAUSES OF PHYSICAL SICKNESS



SAID: “For what concerns your question of yesterday, namely about the often long lasting and severe state of illness that precedes the death of the body, and also about the often very early dead of children, this is only allowed by Me to improve the people, but this does not mean that it was a decision that came from the almightiness of My will.

[2] Look, the first men, who always stayed in the order and simplicity that was shown to them by My Spirit, did really not know about any sickness which precedes physical death. They mostly reached a very high age, became never sick, and they finally fell quietly asleep, and by that their soul did not feel any pain or fear of death.

[3] Their food was always the same, and not today this and tomorrow something different. They mostly lived from milk, bread and good, ripe tree fruit. This kind of dish was their food for their body during their whole life, and to quench their thirst, fresh spring water was used.

[4] For this reason the nerves of their body were always fed by the same good, harmless substances of the soul, and no bad, impure and therefore harmful soul substance could creep into the body. That is why those men always stayed strong and healthy,

spiritually as well as physically.

[5] But in this time and also in the much earlier times, look at the many thousands of different delicacies with which people fill their stomach and belly, then it will immediately become clear to you how in this situation all kinds of unfermented and therefore impure, bad and harmful substances often take possession of the whole human body and gradually torture and torment it more and more. Because such various substances in a human body are then constantly coming into a fight which can be calmed down for a period of time after seeking protection by taking all kinds of herbs and roots that are known through experience and with which they appease the internal soul substance revolution.

[6] But such good health does not last long, especially for an old person, unless he for a long time sought protection by taking very simple food for his body. But this does usually not happen because when the people, for what concerns their body, become bearably healthier through a fortunately chosen medicine, most of them will soon like their old delicacies again, become then more sick than they were before, will begin to have trouble and will usually end in a painful way.

[7] Look, this is why Moses prescribed the menu for the Israelites who were delivered from the hard slavery of Egypt. Those who strictly lived according to it, remained healthy up to a high age, but very soon many wanted their Egyptian meat pots, and the result was that soon after that they became sick, weak and tired and had to end their earthly life with all kinds of physical sicknesses.

[8] Still more sadly in this respect is what happens to children.

[9] Firstly their parents have sinned here and there and have by that filled their body with a great number of bad and harmful soul substances, and thus the child is procreated by a sinful father in the body of an even more sinful mother. Question: how can out of such body come forth a healthy child?

[10] And secondly, it is especially during pregnancy that the mother is mostly craving for all kinds of delicacies, and her family members cannot think of a better service than to give in as much as

possible to the desire of the pregnant woman.

[11] On this occasion, the child receives a second blow against his health. It is not sufficient for the child to come out completely sick from the mother's body, but immediately after that he must be nourished with an even worse mother's milk. This is the second, even harder blow against the basic principles of the health of a child.

[12] If a child withstood as fortunate as possible and so-called 'safe and sound' those two blows against health with all kinds of medicine, there is still a third blow against health. The child grows up of course, becomes cute and adorable for the people around him. Then he all too soon will be greatly spoiled and provided with all kinds of sweets, because such foolish parents cannot forbid anything to their darling. But what is the result of this? That the child will prematurely spoil and weaken his stomach and the necessary digestive organs, so much so that he will already soon catch all kinds of physical sicknesses and also die early.

[13] Many children die already in the body of their mother. A greater number *die* soon after birth within 2 to 3 years, but most of them from 4 to 12 years. The children who then still reach a riper age must firstly have clever and reasonable parents, must have followed a chaste and healthy life and did not get angry or vexed. In this way they still can come to a very good and bearable health and reach 60, 70, 80 years or older. But then their old age is in itself as good as a sickness which is still a result of the mother's body and comes mostly also from the sins of their youth.

[14] From this short explanation you can see that I absolutely was never the cause of the human physical sicknesses, but the people themselves, and this from the moment that they thoughtlessly and willfully left more and more My commandments and rules which I always gave to them, and they followed their reason and their will which became more and more darkened and confused by the evil spirits that are in the air, the earth and the water.

[15] The elders knew very well that the night outside is no friend of men, but nevertheless, they try to accomplish their big

plans of speculation during the night. However, all this kind of excessive speculation is the same as theft and murder that – as you well know – are committed mostly during the night.

[16] The Earth is big enough to feed thousand times more people than the people who live now on the Earth. But greed, miserliness and the lust for speculation have bordered and marked the landed properties. And those who are most rich, miserly and powerful often took the biggest and best pieces of land into possession, and they persecuted all those who wanted to resist against it. And so it happened that many possess thousand times more of excellent land than is needed for the livelihood of themselves and their family.

[17] On the other hand, many hundred of thousands had to go to the coasts of the sea to take out from there their bad and unhealthy food. By that, the navigation was invented, and men sailed far and wide along the shores of the sea and hunted recklessly for the treasures and riches that were hidden in the sea, and so very big nations live at this time at and from the sea, and all this was not the case with the first men on Earth.

[18] But when this is so – as experience teaches us – how can a somewhat reasonable person think by far that the nations in this time who greatly stepped out of the former order, can be and stay as healthy as those first men on Earth who, since the body of the mother, never stepped out of that order?

[19] The state of sickness which presently precedes the physical death of men is therefore nothing else than the result of the almost complete rejection of the ancient order, but is at the same time also a protector of the healthy soul still present in many, for it takes care that the soul will gradually separate himself from his bad flesh, will by that detach himself from the shackles of the bad soul substances of his body, and when these cause too much damage he can still in time separate from his body forever with the help of his better spirit of the beyond. After that, he will eternally not wish anymore in the least to enter a body again, except when he would have come out of his body entirely evil, and then, to bitterly revenge himself against the flesh, will try to enter the flesh of a

human being who still lives on Earth in order to torture it in the most cruel and merciless way, which you could see and experience oftentimes from people who were possessed by evil spirits.

[20] And with this, My friend, I have more than sufficiently answered your question of yesterday. Now we will have a closer look at the chasing of the gazelle of today and more of these things.

65. THE BATTLE OF NATURE



YOU may go around the whole Earth and you will discover, for what the outer appearances are concerned, nothing else but enmity amongst the creatures.

[2] Look at the sun, which is certainly the greatest benefactor of the Earth and all creatures, because by its light and warmth everything comes to life again and grows and becomes strong. The plant kingdom is like shooting out anew of the soil of the Earth and produces fruit within the order of every kind. The sap in the trees begins to flow again, they receive buds, leaves, blossoms, and then gradually the fruit ripens.

[3] A countless number of the most various winged insects have laid their eggs. The light and the warmth of the sun hatch them out and they fill the air with numberless little and bigger creatures.

[4] This is the way of the birds, the fishes in the water and the numberless other animals in this element. And the other animals and the people even enjoy the sun. So it is, as I said, certainly the greatest benefactor of the Earth and its creatures, but at the same time also the greatest enemy of the Earth and its creatures.

[5] Because look, it does not take long for the sun to call everything to life on the surface of the Earth. After that, it increases in light and warmth, so much so that it kills everything again in the summer what it created during the winter and spring.

[6] Your region here is an example of this in itself. In the second half of the winter till the first half of spring, everything becomes green, and your region looks like a paradise. And what is it now?

It is hardly half autumn and it is a steppe wherein you seldom can find anything green. Everything is withered and dead.

[7] And if you go to Africa, or the southern parts of Arabia, then you will need to travel many days before you will find something alive, because the heat of the sun kills everything that it possibly has brought to life in a winter.

[8] In the so-called temperate zones of the Earth, things are more praiseworthy, but then the winters last much longer than here, and the plants and animals do not thrive anymore in such abundance as they do in these warm regions of the Earth. And so you will see everywhere on Earth that the sun is on the one hand the greatest benefactor of the Earth, but on the other hand its greatest enemy.

[9] Even the sea in the hottest zones is little crowded by fish and other sea animals when the sun develops its greatest strength. They flee further to the north or more to the south, depending on whether the sun develops its greatest heat in this or that hemisphere.

[10] And look, as the sun is in relation to the Earth, all the creatures on Earth are more or less in relation to each other.

[11] This is for instance already the case among the elements. Is the water, next to the sun, not one of the greatest benefactors on Earth? Does not every farmer wish a blissful rain when his fields, pastures and gardens become dry? And when it comes, the whole creation is as if shouting from joy.

[12] But if there is, instead of a blissful rain shower, one heavy cloudburst after another, then no one on the whole Earth will praise its usefulness because by their mighty streams of water they destroy everything they come across, and then they leave a vast region of waste soil behind them of which men cannot make good use anymore despite often centuries of great effort.

[13] So also, the different winds are very great benefactors to the soil of the Earth and the physical health of all creatures. But when they degenerate in great storms and hurricanes they are not very useful but bring only damage, at least from the point of view of the human reason, because it is not capable to evaluate how effective

these violent phenomena are for a great useful purpose.

[14] This is also how it goes with the plants among which many are noble, but more of them are not noble, which you call ‘weeds’. When someone has a clean field to sow his wheat and barley, those 2 noble kinds of grain will develop well and purely, but if an enemy would come during the night to straw a quantity of seeds of weed on the wheat and barley field, and the weeds would then come out between the noble grain, they would soon oppress and suffocate them.

[15] Apart from that, there exist certain kinds of plants that prevent other plants from coming up when they take possession of a big or small piece of land.

[16] And so you can see the same thing happening before you in the animal kingdom. The one animal serves the other as prey and food for what concerns his flesh. And man – a kind of animal himself as far as his flesh is concerned – is and remains the greatest predator. Because a gazelle or a sheep will flee when they see a wolf, a bear, a lion, a tiger or other devouring animals coming close, but man, when he is provided of all kinds of weapons that he invented by his intellect, does not flee for such vicious animals, but he greedily chases them to possess their fur, and will now and then also change their flesh into a well tasting piece of roast meat by the fire.

66. THE PURPOSE OF THE BATTLE OF NATURE



OUR question is actually why I allow those enmities on a celestial body like the Earth. On this I say to you that apart from the Earth there are countless much bigger celestial bodies, and there you will find no or very little of this kind of earthly enmities among the created.

[2] Yes, then why exactly on this Earth? I say to you: because the people of this Earth are, for what concerns their soul and spirit, in a position to become children of God by which they then also will be capable to do what I can do. That is why it was said to the

elders by the mouth of the prophets: 'You are My children, and therefore gods, just as I, your Father, am God.'

[3] But to bring a soul into that position he must, as they use to say, after a long series of years, in a way be joined from countless soul particles from the kingdom of all creatures on this Earth. And this joining of those often endless many souls of creatures is that which the old wise men who knew about it, called 'migration of the souls'.

[4] The outer material forms of the creatures destroy each other from both sides, but by that, many souls who live in those creatures become free. Those who are similar unite themselves and are procreated again in a material form on a next, higher level, and so on till man.

[5] And what applies to the soul, applies also to his spirit of the beyond, which is the actual procreator, further guider, developer and preserver of the souls up to the human soul, who only after that will enter into his sphere of freedom, and in moral respect he will be capable to further develop himself.

[6] Only after the soul has raised himself to a certain degree of spiritual perfection, will his spirit of light and love of the beyond unite with him, and from that moment on man will be more and more like God. And when the body will then be taken away from the soul, he will already be a being who will be entirely like God, and out of himself he will be able to call everything into existence and also wisely maintain it.

[7] What I told you now, happens only on this Earth and on no other celestial body to such great extent as precisely on this Earth, and he who is wise will understand this for the following reason: because this Earth corresponds to My heart. And since I Myself have also only one heart and not several hearts, there also can be only one celestial body that was set out of Me which corresponds exactly to My heart, namely with its most inner point of life.

[8] You still cannot clearly realize it, and if I wanted to make it as clear as possible to your mind, we would be busy for more than a 1,000 years before you would come to understand My inner

wisdom a little more clearly.

[9] But when you will become one with My Spirit in your soul, in one moment you will realize and understand more than you would do now yourself in a 1,000 years by means of difficult research.

[10] And since I am now here Myself, and all things are possible to Me, I will show you – for what concerns the soul – what happened to the chasing that you saw and watched today.

67. THE EXAMPLE OF A JOINING OF ANIMAL SOULS



YOU saw how the giant eagle captured the jackal that had eaten the gazelle, how he flew high in the sky and then let it fall on a stony ground, on which occasion that predator met a certain death. But then it was grabbed by the eagle again and carried far to the south where the eagle had its nest and dwelling place between the rocks. When he arrived there with his prey, he let it fall down again from a great height because it became already too heavy for him.

[2] But the prey hit a rock face and fell down in a rather deep canyon of the valley. Arab shepherds grazed their meager flocks in that canyon, and they soon saw how the giant eagle – a known enemy of the shepherds' flocks – flew lower and lower to pick up his prey that fell too deep in the valley.

[3] When the shepherds noticed this, they immediately stretched their bows and aimed at the lower flying eagle, and when, according to their calculations, he was low enough, they shot sharp arrows with their bows. And see, the eagle was well hit by 3 shepherds, fell down dead in the canyon and was taken by the shepherds as a true trophy of victory. But the poor jackal with his gazelle still lies between the low rocks where he fell down and will only be eaten after some time by other predatory birds.

[4] And now look there, before the door stands already a human form as of a child, and waits for a next procreation so that he can be taken up in the body of a mother. And behind this soul's appearance you can see a shining form. This is already the

soul's spirit from the beyond that will take care that this soul who still belongs to the kingdom of nature will at a next opportunity be cared for in the body of a mother.

[5] And now you also saw how from the 3 last already completed animal levels – of course after many thousands of previous processes – a human soul appears.

[6] Out of this, a male child will be born into the world, who, if he will be well educated, can become a great man. The gentleness of the gazelle will rule his heart, the cleverness of the jackal his mind and the strength of the giant eagle his reason, his courage and his will. His character will be mostly warlike which he can however temper by his heart and his cleverness by which he can be a very useful person for no matter what kind of office. However, if he will be a soldier, he will be fortunate by his courage, but he also will be a prey for the weapons of war of others.

[7] But to let you see the child directly from his birth, already next year your earthly neighbor will be his father.

[8] Now you know everything. I have told and shown you something which I did not tell or show any other person in that manner till now. But let us now take some bread and wine again and strengthen us after this rather long explanation.”

68. THE LORD SEEMS TO FAVOR THE GENTILES



Y advice was followed immediately. We all took some bread and wine again, and **the present Pharisees** said: “Only now we believe completely that You are the Lord and the true Christ. For such secrets in the big nature can only be known to You and further to no other human being on the whole Earth.”

[2] **And on this, My disciples** said: “Lord and Master, now and then You showed us also such things in the presence of the people, but You actually never taught us so deeply about such secrets of nature, and You also did not explain them to us in such manner. It remains strange that You speak more openly among the gentiles

than among us Jews.”

[3] I said: “Are you then still so shortsighted and do you not understand its reason? Since your birth, when did you become men acquainted with nature? You never examined one or the other phenomena. You let it go as it came, and you were completely indifferent whether finally a wolf will tear up and devour a sheep or that a courageous ram will finally knock down a wolf and kill him or let him hastily run away.

[4] You were always zealous in keeping the laws of Moses, but you were seldom or not at all concerned about the laws in nature, and so I knew that I had to teach you first and put it in the right light before you. All the rest that you need, you will at some opportunity gradually experience with Me.

[5] In the beginning it was difficult for many of you to consider Me more than a prophet, and you had a lot of objections. But now that it is clear to you – although not everyone of you in the same measure – that I am the true Messiah, the time has also come for you to further explain and reveal many other things on the subject of the nature of the Earth, but you only will understand and realize all those things when you will be filled by My Spirit.

[6] Then you will also realize that one cannot give these kind of explanations in this still totally dark time, especially among the Jews who do not have even a bit of understanding up to now, especially of the meaning of the first book of Moses. And the covering of Moses’ face still covers their inner sight.

[7] That is why you will have done enough when you will have awakened your brothers to have faith in Me. All the rest, as far as necessary, will be accomplished by My Spirit in them.

[8] But the Romans are people who are well acquainted with the nature and have much experience and made observations. Therefore, such phenomena and also other things on the subject of nature should be taught to them, and they also can understand it and they have more light than you. I moreover say to you that the great light will soon be taken away from the stubborn Jews and be abundantly given to the gentiles.”

[9] **On this, a disciple of John said:** “Lord and Master, these are words from Your holy mouth that cannot make us Jews happy but only sad, for according to the Scripture we are the chosen people of God, and You Yourself came forth from us. Now the gentiles will be favored and we will in a certain way be scattered among all the nations on Earth and possess no more country or home, and about the successor of king David, this also will come down to nothing.”

69. THE LOVE OF THE LORD FOR THE JEWISH PEOPLE



SAID: “My friend, now you still speak and think like a blind man. The Jews were the chosen people of God, but did they also behave to be and remain that for which they were called since the time of Abraham? They kept the law outwardly in a very dry manner and praised God with their lips but their hearts remained hard and far from God.

[2] They were admonished many times by the mouth of many prophets and other wise teachers about how they should behave towards God, but did they act even a little according to those admonishments?

[3] They were constantly fighting among each other and went to war to possess earthly goods. I once punished them for this with the Babylonian captivity by the sword of the very pagan king Nebuchadnezzar, and I let them there in all dishonor and need for 40 full years so that they would better their life. Yet, I did not leave them without prophets and teachers.

[4] When they bettered their life again, I allowed them to return to their country and rebuild the city of Jerusalem and the temple. And they once more became a people of reputation.

[5] But when they were doing well again, they gradually forgot Me, did not listen to the prophets and teachers but persecuted them and stoned several of them.

[6] When I saw that the Jewish people did again not heed My admonishments, I awakened the Romans. These came with a

mighty army of war, conquered not only the Promised Land but moreover a lot of Asia, and they appointed hard feudal kings over the Jews and also over other nations, but they let them keep their scriptures and religion.

[7] Now I finally came Myself, went several times to Jerusalem, taught in the temple, and as Father I also wanted to protect the people – like a hen with her chicks – under the wings of My love, power and wisdom. But what did My appearance, My teaching and My deeds accomplish up to now? Nothing, except that they hate Me more every day, persecute Me in all directions and, as far as My body is concerned, they very seriously want to kill Me, in which the Jews will also succeed soon so that the judgment, which is threateningly represented to them by the Scripture, will be fulfilled to them.

[8] The Old Covenant will cease to exist, as the prophet Daniel prophesied, and a New Covenant will be made in which also all the gentiles will become heirs and possessors of the Kingdom of God, for the Romans have already conquered the Promised Land once but did not destroy anything in it. Shortly after Me, the Romans will conquer it again and will destroy it in such a way that of the many cities – Jerusalem not excluded – not one stone will be left upon another, and a short time after that, they will not even be able to determine on which spot this or that city had stood.

[9] So when I said here that the light of the Jews will be taken away and given to the gentiles, am I then unjust? Or you go and convert all the Jews for Me so that they believe in Me, then I will stop the last judgment for them, renew the Old Covenant and will from now on also uphold it till the end of times.

[10] But take care and see how you will fare with that undertaking. I tell you: even much worse than what happened to your teacher John who preached repentance in the desert for the forgiveness of sins, but was soon after that thrown into prison by Herod who let him later be beheaded on the request of the adulterous woman Herodias.

[11] Do you think that you will be better off if you would now

convert in My name the high and proud Jews of their sins and show them their numerous vices?

[12] If you will look at this with your reason with only a little spark of light, you surely will realize that the measure of the sins of this people became full, just like the measure of the sins of the Hanochites at the time of Noah became full, after which the flood came that swallowed up all the enemies of God.

[13] Or are the Jews in Jerusalem now perhaps friends of God if they have nothing else in mind than to capture and to kill Me, God, their Lord and Father? Should we let such people subsist?

[14] Look, this cannot be for the sake of the many other chosen ones. That is why I will greatly shorten the time of the downfall of Jerusalem and its people and I will let the judgment come.

70. FALSE CHRISTS, FALSE PROPHETS AND FALSE WONDERS.

ADVICES FOR THE CONDUCT OF THE DISCIPLES.



ES many Jews will also believe in Me, and many already believe, but it will not take long before a great number among them will arise, and each one of them will write and proclaim another gospel about Me, as this is already the case in many places, by which then many false Christs will exist. Because these false spreaders of My teaching will say to their disciples: ‘Look, here is the true Christ, and I can know since I was His eyewitness.’ And another will claim the same thing about his Christ.

[2] And so, these false prophets will soon also cause great confusion among the gentiles because as Jews they firstly will more easily be believed than the gentiles who are awakened by Me, and under the expression ‘in My name’ they will also perform false wonders and signs. By that they will seduce many people and convince them about their false Christs.

[3] I say this to you now, so that you will know, when you yourselves will meet such false prophets, you will then not believe

what they teach, but will witness against them in My name and warn the people against them, and punish the false prophets to keep them from spreading My teaching.

[4] If you will become lukewarm in those activities, you will be like the salt that has become powerless and useless. And if the salt has become powerless and useless, with what will we then make the food tasteful? So teach the peoples that they should especially heed the false prophets and should neither believe their words nor their signs.

[5] But you yourselves should not disagree, neither in words nor in deeds, but give to the people the full truth that never contradicts itself, just like you have received and seen it from Me. For if you will disagree among each other, and the one will say this and the other that, you yourselves will lay by that the seed of the disaster of discord in My teaching and by that you will not be able to rejoice in much praise and reward from Me. But one will mostly recognize you as My true disciples if you love one another as also I have always loved you, and if you never will fall into disputes and quarrels which will very soon be the case with the false prophets. Then the one who proclaimed the false Christ will persecute the other with cursing and condemnation by which My teaching that I gave you will be broken into pieces as will also soon happen to Jerusalem and other cities where no stone will be left upon another.

[6] But I will know how to keep My teaching completely pure till the end of times. But woe to all antichrists in the course of time. They will not be able to perform their evil practices much longer than the Jews did to Me since the time of Moses up to Me, and I will visit them with a world judgment that will be even worse than the one at the time of Noah, Sodom and Gomorrah and many other cities and nations up to this time.

[7] But I will continually stay with My followers till the end of times and will come to them in different ways, one time here and then there, and I Myself will be their teacher in all things, for in that time I will also come as a flash of lightning that illuminates

from the east to the west and which will enlighten everything that is obscure and dark on the Earth.

[8] Look, the strong light of that flash of lightning will destroy them, namely the adversaries, just like the light of a flash of lightning will kill the crabs when it shines on them. There is a similarity between animals and men who, like the Israelites, shun to walk on in My light and are constantly longing for the full meat pots of the dark Egypt. So a crab, that can more often be found in Egypt, has also the characteristic that it usually prefers to search for its food in the mud. And when from time to time it accidentally crawls to the light, it quickly makes a backward movement and will look for its dark mud again.

[9] Tell Me, are the present Jews in the Promised Land not exactly the same as the Israelites whom Moses set free from Egypt, and who, instead of going forward in the desert to reach the Promised Land, only wanted to have their Egyptian meat pots back and who therefore blamed Moses for leading them out of Egypt where they were so well off? Can such people not be compared with those ugly mud animals that cannot bare the light of a flash of lightning and are constantly moving backward instead of moving forward to search for their food?

[10] That is why I provided and determined for their final judgment that they finally would all die by the fire and the light of My flash of lightning.

[11] And so will be fulfilled what I already told you at some opportunity, namely that I finally will let the Earth be purified of its dirt by the fire.

[12] I think that with this I have more than sufficiently shown you the reason why the light of the Jews will be taken away and given to the gentiles.

[13] The Jews as such will continue to exist among the gentiles among all nations on Earth, and they will still hope for a Messiah who will however come no more. After that, they continually will look like animals, like dogs, because a dog will always return to what he has spit out, and a pig to the pool of mud in which he

bathed and dirtied himself.

[14] The triple covering before the face of Moses will hang before their eyes because they cannot bear the clear light from the Heavens and will therefore never grasp or perceive the inner meaning of the Scriptures of Moses and the prophets.

[15] Are you now satisfied with this well-founded explanation of Mine?”

[16] **The disciple of John** said: “Lord and Master, I have to be satisfied with this, for I very clearly can see that this is exactly so and as it will also be so in the future, as You have very clearly revealed to us all.

[17] Oh, who can change it when people misuse their free will so much and prefer to be led around by the leash of the devil and be deceived instead of following up Your advice to raise them towards all freedom and give them the eternal life in Your Kingdom.

[18] I only hope that You, o Lord and Master, will still keep a lot of means in store to also – in the course of the times of times – call from the crabs men into existence who will recognize You. For You did not let them come into this world to let them remain crabs for eternity for what their soul is concerned?”

[19] **I** said: “That which is reserved to the long-lasting times of the future lies hidden in the decree of My love and wisdom. It will however still take long times before the light of the last of the suns will be extinguished. Men will see many stars in the sky go out and see again others taking their place, but the actual crabs will therefore not have lost much of their ugly appearance. But to Me 1,000 earthly years are like one moment. That which cannot be accomplished in one long time, can maybe be accomplished in a next or in 1,000 periods of time.

[20] The one who wants to be helped will also be helped soon. But the one, who wants to persist in his stubbornness, let him persist as long as he wants. And if he wants to persist in it eternally, he is also free to do that. For also the internal material body of the Earth, as well as the endless many other celestial bodies, need its

food to subsist, and it will take a terrible long time before one atom of the interior of the Earth will reach its surface again.

[21] Although you do not understand what I want to say with this: the lost son is already on his way back, but almost endlessly long times will still be necessary before he will entirely come back into the old house of the Father.

[22] On a small scale, every sinner is like a lost son, and over his true come back there will be greater joy than over 99 righteous ones who do not need penance.

[23] But the word that I speak to you is not only for this Earth but in a corresponding manner for the whole of infinity, for My words are not human words but God's words, and they are also heard by the numberless myriads of angels and are carried from the one end of My endless many creations to the other, and they will have their effect.

[24] This you also do not understand, but when you will be reborn in the spirit, you also will be able to look into the endless depths of My mercy. Be satisfied for the moment with what you heard now, for in this world I will not often say similar things anymore as those which I told you now. So keep it with and in yourselves till the time of your inner enlightenment after which you also will be able to speak with people who are understanding and enlightened about all the things you heard from Me. But keep it to yourselves for those who are not understanding, and do not throw My pearls like feed for the pigs.”

[25] The disciples kept this to themselves, observed it when they spread My teaching and did not reveal many other things about Me, especially not to the Jews, apart from especially My suffering and dying and My resurrection, and that accordingly I was truly the Messiah. But even about these last events they were not completely in agreement with each other. This already became clear when after the news of the women, namely of Magdalena, about My resurrection, a few of My disciples believed, but others not and took the statement of the women for a fable, till I personally appeared before them, and it was still difficult to

completely convince them that I had risen. On this occasion I told the disciples that they especially should beware of disagreements among each other. But with and among them it was the same as with other people: their spirit was willing but their flesh was weak.

71. THE DIFFICULTY OF BEING A TEACHER



WHILE we were still together at the table, taking bread and wine, **Barnabas**, a Pharisee as you know, said: “Lord and Master, if You also would consider me worthy to spread Your teaching among the people, I would not leave out one word of Your teaching, neither add one.”

[2] **I** said: “You are a Jew, and by your great wealth you were able to become a Pharisee, since you could prove that you belong to the tribe of Levi, but you were raised among the Greeks and by that you acquired much of the Greek stubbornness, and in the course of time you will not get along well with another of My disciples, but I will say something to you all. Thus listen to Me.

[3] A true spreader of My teaching must be like a very experienced, compliant and highly skilful doctor.

[4] For instance, a doctor comes into a village where he is called to many sick people who suffer from gout and all kinds of feverish sicknesses. Now the doctor thinks to himself: ‘I already treated many such sick people and helped them with this and that medicine, and these sick people suffer from the same illness. So I will give them the same medicines, then they will become healthy.’ The doctor does this, and look, the sick people get worse by his medicines instead of better. They lose their confidence in him and look for another doctor. The doctor gets angry about this and says to himself: ‘These medicines of mine have helped already so many people, then why not them?’ He is offended and goes home.

[5] Soon came the second one who was called. He was wiser than the first one and took information as to how the sick person had lived, what kind of food he had taken and by which sicknesses he

had been tormented since his youth. And so he took information on more things about which a wise doctor should inform. And based on these he adjusted his medicines – for this sick person this and for another one something very different. And look, that doctor, who took the trouble, soon healed the sick people in the whole village because he knew the art to adjust his medicines according to the different characters and qualities of his patients.

[6] And as a doctor can accomplish fortunate healings in this manner – if it really is not too late – so can a true soul-doctor do it also with the many soul-sick people in this world where one soul is credulous, the other one little inclined to believe, again another one proud, or misery, selfish and many more of such things. Now if the soul-doctor comes to such different sick people and will directly in a stone-hard manner proclaim the teaching that he received from Me, it will not be very useful.

[7] The one who cannot weep with those who weep, laugh with those who laugh, be cheerful with those who are cheerful, and serious with those who are serious, is still not fit to spread My Kingdom on Earth and looks in this respect like a countryman who, when he plows a field, puts his hand to the plow but always looks behind him to see how the furrows are, forgetting by that the plow is slanting because of too little attention of the plower, and he can do nothing else except to draw the plow back to the spot where he was still going straight and start plowing again.

[8] It is the same with the teachers who want to teach something to everyone in one and the same manner, regardless of what kind of character and what kind of natural qualities they may have. A few of them will grasp something of that teaching because the teaching was precisely fit for their capabilities. The others however will leave the teacher, being more ignorant and unqualified than before.

[9] And so also when you spread My teaching, you will have to be very attentive as to what kind of character those people have to whom you proclaim My teaching. Otherwise it will not be very useful.

[10] A credulous person will soon believe anything, especially

when you confirm the teaching with a miracle. But remember by that: the one who accepts something new too easily, will also quite as easily let it go, especially when he is pressured by a temptation. You will have more work to do with someone who does not easily believe something, but once you win him, he will also stay with what he accepted. That is why you should make more effort for them than for credulous people. Do not trust them when they so gladly and without difficulty have accepted your teaching. For when you will come back to them again, perhaps hardly half of them will still keep your teaching, and the other half went back to their old, impure belief or followed one of the false prophets.

[11] So agree completely for what concerns My teaching. But for what concerns the lecture, you should first look as to what kind of children of the spirit they are, and only after that you can proclaim My gospel to them, and then you will accomplish good work everywhere.

[12] Think also about the ancient Roman proverb according to which no deity can be formed out of a bulky and rotten chunk of wood and that a meek, fearful dove never brooded an eagle from its eggs. So, as I told you oftentimes, be clever as serpents but still full of meekness as doves.

[13] The office of a teacher is one of the most difficult professions, but blessed is the one who knows how to efficiently manage such office.”

[14] On this, **Barnabas** said: “O Lord and Master, now You very openly spoke the purest truth, for I also was a teacher before and experienced how difficult it is to deal with various people. Therefore, above all I will also take this advice of Yours to heart and transform it into deeds.”

[15] I said: “This you will do, but you also will be one of the first who will come into great conflict with one of My chosen disciples, and then you will separate from each other for a long time. I do not say when, at which opportunity or with which disciple, but when it happens, you will remember what I just told you now.”

[16] **Barnabas** said on this: “Lord and Master, since You know

this beforehand, it should be possible for You to put the right obstacle in the way before such unpleasant event happens.”

[17] **I** said: “The most free men on the whole Earth are you, My disciples, and precisely you I do not want to chain in the least by My almightiness. For if I send you into the world to free other people in My name from their chains of the hard bondage under the law, then how can I send you as chained helpers? If I would do that, things would look bad for the people for what concerns their liberation and salvation, for in that case a new, heavier joke than the old one would be put on them, and My coming down here would be useless.

[18] But I awaken you as apostles and prophets of the new and not anymore of the old covenant, and by that I make you the first liberated ones on this Earth, so that through you My salvation will pass over to all people, in the right way and manner and in the perfect order of My eternal love, wisdom and power. Did you, Barnabas, understand this?”

[19] Barnabas said that he well understood it, and all of them said the same.

[20] **I** said to them: “Stay in Me, then I will stay with you till the end of times, and I will awaken each one of you in My Kingdom on his youngest day.”

72. THE PRIEST OF APOLLO INQUIRES ABOUT THE LORD



WHEN I had said that, the priest of Apollo let the innkeeper know via a messenger that he and 2 other pagan priests would come to see how the God of the Jews looked like and who was apparently staying under his roof.

[2] We told the messenger that this is a public inn and that everyone was free to come in.

[3] This Apollo priest and his 2 subordinates heard from the servants of the innkeeper that a God of the Jews was staying with the innkeeper, and who did many unheard off miracles that were

never performed before.

[4] The messenger went immediately outside and told the 3 pagan priests that they could freely enter if they wanted.

[5] Then the priests did not hesitate long and came soon to us in the guestroom.

[6] **The Apollo priest** went immediate to the supreme judicial city officer and said: “Supreme judicial city officer, enlightened by my god Apollo, tell me who of these many Jews who sit at the table is the miracle working God of the Jews, so that also I can bow down before Him and show Him honor, for we priests of the gods of Egypt, Greece and Rome also honor the gods of other nations as they deserve it.”

[7] The supreme judicial city officer looked at Me somehow questioning whether or not he should answer this imaginary chief priest.

[8] But I gave him a sign that he first should offer him a full cup of wine, telling him that it was the water from the cistern of the innkeeper.

[9] **The supreme judicial city officer** understood My sign and said to the Apollo priest, who looked unusually silly: “Here beside us is still a small empty table. Sit down. And here are also 3 cups, filled with the water from the cistern of the innkeeper, so that you first can quench your thirst with this best water of our whole city.”

[10] Immediately 3 full cups were placed before the 3, and the Apollo priest who was not exactly a friend of water, tasted it anyway and discovered that it was not water but the best Cyprus wine that was only drank at the tables of the emperor. So he emptied his cup at once till the last drop, and his 2 subordinate priests followed his example.

[11] When **the Apollo priest** had emptied his cup, he said in full amazement: “What? Is that water from the cellar of the innkeeper? This is one of the best wines of the island of Cyprus. When did a cistern ever have such water? That is not possible, you are joking with me.”

[12] **The supreme judicial city officer** said: “Then let the

innkeeper himself take you outside to his cistern and scoop it out yourself and drink it. Then come back and tell us if someone is joking with you. But you surely will not think that the innkeeper is so foolish and silly to let a few hundred sacks of the best wine come from Cyprus for a huge amount of money to pour them out of the sacks into his cistern.”

[13] **Then the Apollo priest stood immediately up, and the innkeeper escorted him with his 2 subordinate priests to the cistern. He put the pail into the hand of the chief priest and said: “scoop the water out yourself and taste it.”**

[14] **The Apollo priest did so at once and he discovered that it was not water but excellent wine. His 2 subordinate priests did likewise and discovered the same. They advised the innkeeper not to leave such valuable water in the cistern but to fill many wine sacks and to keep them for special guests who would gladly like to pay a lot for it.**

[15] **The innkeeper said: “I did not receive any order or authority from the One who changed the water in my cistern into the most delicious wine, and therefore it has to stay as it is.”**

[16] **The priests could not oppose to that, and together with the innkeeper they came back to us in the guestroom.**

[17] **When they took their seat again, the Apollo priest said with a certain sadness to the supreme judicial city officer: “We never heard about this kind of thing from all our gods, starting from Jupiter to the smallest well nymph. We dealt with already hundreds of the most important magicians, and they were able to accomplish many wondrous things, but to change water into wine, this did not yet come up in any of them. Therefore I ask you to show me now the One from this rather big company to whom I have to show my greatest esteem and respect.”**

[18] **On this, the supreme judicial city officer said with My permission: “The one who sits at my right hand is the Lord of all glory, the Master of all masters and the God of all gods.”**

[19] **When the Apollo priest heard that, he said: “Then of all the**

gods He must be the unfathomable fatum¹ of which they themselves are dependent, just like the sun, the moon and all the stars and the whole Earth with everything on and in it. And I think that it is also written in an old Egyptian book that this unfathomable deity – namely that fatum – will once reveal Himself more closely to the gods and also to the people of this Earth.

[20] Today, at sunrise as usual, I gave my morning salutation for all the people to the god Apollo, but by that I was very surprised when I saw 2 suns rising one after the other. And I was even more surprised when above and under the second sun I noticed very clearly written words which I could however not read because they were written in Hebrew letters, and therefore I could even less understand their meaning.

[21] But I thought by myself that this must have a very exceptional meaning. And when I later took information everywhere whether anyone else besides me had seen this special sunrise, I came to the people of this inn, and they told me that the God of the Jews, escorted by several servants, took really accommodation here yesterday close to the evening and that He was still staying here. If You, o Lord, Master and God, are the One, forgive me that I also show you here my fullest esteem and reverence – although I am a pagan priest – and ask for Your divine permission to build a temple for You in our city on the highest top in order to always highly glorify you therein.

¹ Latin for 'fate'.

73. THE TRUE WORSHIP OF GOD AND PAGAN WORSHIP



SAID: “You can leave this out, for My temple is everywhere, especially in the heart of men who believe in Me, who love Me above all and keep My commandments.

[2] Look at the Earth with everything that it bears and contains, and also the firmament. All that is also My temple that I built Myself. Therefore, I do not need a temple that is build by human hands. But if you belief that I am the Lord, then turn away from your idols and your temples that are made by human hands. If human beings made their gods with their hands and built temples for them in which they offered and made promises to people who also offered, and they do not even possess the power to let grow the very smallest of moss plants out of the soil, then what power must your gods and temples possess that were made by them?

[3] But the priests possess a bad power, namely that of deceit, and the power to awaken a very dark superstition in the mind of the people. That power comes from the chief of the devils who knows how to darken the hearts of all men by means of his secret ways in order to then enrich and expand his kingdom with them.

[4] But woe to those who well know that what they teach the people is worthless but who nevertheless lead the people into darkness in order to let them work for them in the sweat of their face to acquire a very good worldly, effortless and careless life from the offerings that they want from them.

[5] I tell you that I will look after the poor deceived people, but never after those who deceive, for these know what they do but the others do not know.

[6] You yourself never believed in one of your gods, but you nevertheless forced other people to believe what was to you already for a long time a pure fable of the elders.

[7] If you want to save yourself from downfall, then turn your back to all your gods, instruct the people who were deceived by you about the one, true God of the Jews. Then you also will once

partake of My Kingdom that is not of this world but of the spiritual world of the beyond of which you have no knowledge.”

[8] **On this, the Apollo priest said:** “O Lord, Master and God, that will be a hard task for us. For the people are still too much permeated by the old error that our gods really exist, and if we would instruct them the opposite, we will be in danger to be persecuted and mistreated by the people.”

[9] **I said:** “If you yourselves believe in Me, that faith in Me will give you the power to also easily make the impossible possible.”

[10] **The Apollo priest said:** “We have seen now that by Your will nothing is impossible. If You wish, You can destroy our idol temples in one moment. Then we will not have to give account to the people and it will then be easier for us to speak to the people about You. Because witnesses are not lacking here to testify what You are. Firstly our supreme judicial city officer is a completely valid witness. Then the innkeeper and his personnel and also those Jews over there.”

[11] **I said:** “That could be done but it is better that you first instruct the people about Me on good opportunities, and that the people themselves turn their hands against the temple and the sacred forests around it, which are rather dry brushwood than important sacred forests.”

[12] **On this, the Apollo priest said:** “Master, Lord and God.”

[13] **After this exclamation I said to him:** “When you speak with Me, then call Me only Lord and Master, but call Me only God if you realize in yourself what the deity is. Now you can talk further.”

[14] **And the Apollo priest spoke, saying:** “But how did all those gods exist? I do not want to speak about the little gods, the secondary gods or demigods, neither about the female gods, but those male principal gods that, as far as we remember, were already worshipped by the old Egyptians. There must be something about it because these gods could not have formed out of nothing into the imagination of men. You, o Lord and Master, will certainly entirely know about this.”

74. THE ORIGINS OF IDOLATRY



SAID: “The first inhabitants of Egypt, as descendants of Noah, brought also the knowledge about the one, only true God into that country and worshipped the only true God for more than 700 years. A temple is still remaining, sculptured from a big granite rock and built by 4 consecutive leaders of the shepherds to honor the only true God.

[2] An inscription was carved into the stone wall completely in the back of that temple, with the following few words: ‘Ja bu sim bil’, which means ‘I was, am and will be.’

[3] According to this notion of the deity, the first inhabitants worshipped the one and really only true God – just like Abraham in this country – and the Spirit of God was with them and taught them great things.

[4] However, later on, these first inhabitants, who were taught by the Spirit of God, thought deeper about the personality of the deity, and this all the more as they became more familiar with the powers of nature.

[5] Each power that they discovered was represented as a specific quality of the one initial power in the deity. In order to better instruct the people about it, the powers that flowed from the one deity were represented more illustrative to the people by means of corresponding images. And so they said to the people that each one of these powers was also holy and deserved godly reverence since it resulted from the one and only true God.

[6] They appointed teachers and they also established schools, and in the beginning they were instructed about the main original deity, but later the teaching was changed to mostly the specific powers that came from the divine being. And so, soon after that, for every power, specific teachers were appointed and schools established where every student had to study first before he, after taking exams, was accepted into the main school.

[7] In time these teachers became priests of the separate divine powers or qualities, and thus every priest knew well what he had

to teach.

[8] Only a few schools existed in the beginning, and when in the course of time the number of people greatly increased, not enough schools were available. So they built more schools and temples and provided these temples with the images that go with it. They constantly discovered more of those separate powers coming from the one deity, put up smaller schools and provided the temples again with new deities that go with it and that were corresponding images of the powers from the one, only true deity. And finally they set up easy teachings for the teachers and priests according to which it was sufficient to only recognize and honor only one such power that was represented in the temple, because by that they also would recognize and honor the original main God in all His separate outflows of power and activity.

[9] Therefore, the actual most important knowledge of the one and only true deity subsisted only among the more and more lazy and greedy priests. However, depending on their work, the people did only have to recognize and honor the many separate outflows of power of the one deity, and only a few were allowed to be initiated in the high schools about the deeper secrets.

[10] Also strangers came to Egypt from all directions and wanted to be initiated into the wisdom of the Egyptians. But although the Egyptians, meaning the priests, showed them around from temple to temple and from school to school, they only taught them by means of the temple images which were related to the one main God. Apart from a few lessons, the strangers took also the many images to their own country which they could buy for money, and they also built temples and schools for them for which they appointed teachers and priests.

[11] And look, this is how paganism and image idolatry came into being at that time, and the people were led to believe that they had done everything when they only truly honored one or several images that were presented to them in the temples and when they zealously offered to them according to their means.

[12] The one and only true deity was honored with a certain fear

and shyness as the relentless destiny, and the Greeks built even a temple for that fate, and this with the naming: 'Dedication to the only God who is totally unknown to all men'. So no image was placed in that temple but only a circle that was covered with the 'Veil of Isis' behind which no one could or was allowed to look. [13] And so you have received now in a few words a complete explanation from Me about what is behind the many pagan idol images.

75. THE ORIGINS OF APOLLO WORSHIP



YOU call yourself a priest of Apollo and you do not even know which individual power flowing from God was represented by *Apollo* with the first Egyptians.

[2] Look, already with the first inhabitants of that country the urge for a clearer division of time became stronger, for they realized that time was equally passing by during day or night and divided itself by the length of the day and the night.

[3] Also the day divided itself because the sun reached its highest peak in a half day, but they had greater difficulty with the night. Certain stars assisted them but they soon noticed that the stars did not come up and go down at the same time. So it was more difficult to divide time during the night than during the day.

[4] They first erected high pillars on rather big plains and observed the way of their shadow. With stones they marked the rising and the setting of the sun. Then from these 2 points they made smaller divisions on the line of the shadow, and this according to the length of time that one needed to travel a certain distance at an average walking speed.

[5] Such distance was then called a 'field way' and was about a fourth part of the present-day hour. The length of time of a field way was marked with little stones. Those of 4 field ways with bigger stones. The main pillar in the middle represented noon, and from there several rows of such stones were laid down in an easy to understand manner to measure the time, of course according to

the position of the sun.

[6] The time meters on the fields were called 'Sa-pollo', which means: 'for the field', and this name was chosen to determine the time for the shepherds and other field workers.

[7] Such pillar was soon decorated with an image. In his one hand he held the sun, made of glowing bronze, and which the guard of the field time meter had to hit with a hammer on a long handle, and this with as many hits as the shadow was hours away from sunrise.

[8] From this, the shepherds and the field workers knew how late it was and what they had to do at that time.

[9] It is obvious that in the course of time the field image was also put in all kinds of different forms on the pillar to make the passing of time more illustrative to the people.

[10] With time the people were no longer satisfied with this instrument to measure the field time with which they could not measure the time during the night. They were more intensively observing the stars and discovered your known 12 star images and gave names to them according to the completely natural phenomena that occurred from month to month in Egypt, and among which also 4 human names appeared: the Waterman, the Twins, the Archer and the Virgin, and all those star images they called the Animal Belt¹.

[11] The more the stars were observed, the more precisely they also divided the time of the night, and in the city of Diadeira (Diathira²) they erected a huge Animal Belt assembled from man-made rocks that were cut out, and which exists up to this day and is admired by all astronomers as a great work of art.

[12] From this short explanation of Mine you will now easily realize and perceive the origins of your god Apollo and why the people made it the god of the sun and also the god of several arts and sciences. Then you will also understand that in reality an

¹ Zodiac

² Dendera, Tentyra, Tentora.

Apollo god never existed. But since time was considered by the elders as a main result of the divine power, also that image was moved to the 12 main gods while those 12 main gods were in itself and by itself nothing else but the 12 main results recognized by men of the one original divine power.

[13] From this you surely will be able to conclude how later the many other gods and idols came into being. And now you surely will know how you should teach your blind pagans, so that they can return to Me, the one and only true original Being, and the Existence of all existence and the Life of all life.”

76. THE ADMONITION OF THE LORD TO LOVE AND TO BE PATIENT TO SPREAD HIS TEACHING



IN this, the Apollo priest said: “O Lord and Master, how have we pagans been indescribably blind and foolish up to now. The matter stands now so clear before me as if I myself had lived during the first times of the Egyptians and participated in it and contributed to it. But it is now also clear to me that much effort and work will be necessary to raise the many pagans to the sphere of the light of truth.

[2] I will make every effort within my small group, and I hope that I soon will have my little people ready. But the pagan countries and peoples are widely spread over the Earth. So a much longer time and a lot of courageous teachers will be needed before they will have destroyed the many idol temples.

[3] But trusting in Your help, that matter will be all right after a long time, because the best in our pagan religion is that the government does not force it upon the people, and every real Roman is free to believe what he wants or also not to believe and to live and act according to the teaching of the philosophers of which the Greeks and Romans have many.

[4] For the government it is enough to be a loyal citizen and accept its wise state laws. And the government is little or not interested

whether you believe in this or that god and let everyone choose freely.

[5] No matter if I am a cynic, a follower of Pythagoras, Plato or Aristotle, or an epicure and act accordingly, I am free in all this. And also the teaching of Moses was never a forbidden doctrine of the state for us Romans. And therefore I believe that Your teaching, o Lord and Master, will be sooner accepted by the better pagans than by many Jews who do not understand their own teaching and who also do not have any knowledge about the active powers in nature, and what they do know they adopted from the gentiles.

[6] Therefore, I think that it will be more fruitful to proclaim Your gospel to a scientist than to those people who still do not know why the water from above flows always to the lowest region by the sea and why a stone falls down from above and not the way around. We Romans know this, although not thoroughly but nevertheless the most important part of it. I thank You, o Lord and Master, for Your wise lesson.”

[7] **On this, the supreme judicial city officer said:** “O Lord and Master, on this opportunity I also gained a lot, and I know what I have to do to convert the pagans in the right manner.”

[8] **I said to him:** “What you will do in My name, do it with all love and patience, for you should not proclaim My gospel with the sword in the hand. And I think that it will be very welcome to a lot of people when they are led from their long-lasting, deep darkness into the very clear light of life.

[9] **Take an example on Me, for I also am among you with full of love and patience, I did not say one hard word to anyone and I forced no one to believe in Me, except by a few miracles that I performed out of love in your presence. You also will be able to perform such signs in My name, but if you can do that, be as sparse as possible with them.**

[10] **The old Greek, Egyptian and Roman wise men did not perform any sign and they nevertheless acquired a great number of followers. So it is better for everyone to accept My teaching by the**

power of the truth that is abundantly present in it, instead of only accepting the teaching after being compelled by several miracles. For I say to you: the letter, as well as any other sign *of a letter*, will not bring the spirit of man to life, but it is only the spirit of truth in the word that makes everything alive.

[11] I still could perform a great number of exceptional signs before your eyes, but it is better for you to stay with the word that I spoke to you.

[12] In short, My whole teaching consists of the following: recognize in Me the Spirit of the one and only true God, and love Him above all, and you, as brothers among each other, love also one another in My name as each one of you loves himself. More you do not need, for from this you will be raised by My Spirit into all truth and wisdom out of Me.

[13] I will soon leave this world for what concerns My body, but I will nevertheless stay with you in the power of My Spirit till the end of the times of the world. And what you will ask the Father – this is the eternal love in Me – in My name, will be given to you.

[14] But you should not be much concerned or worried about the things of this world, for I know what you need for what your body is concerned.

[15] Thus, before anything else seek My Kingdom in the love to Me and to yourselves among each other. All the rest will freely be given to you.”

77. THE OMNIPRESENCE AND ALMIGHTINESS OF THE LORD. THE NATURE OF THE SOUL AND THE PROCESS OF SEEING.



ow they all thanked Me deeply for this teaching.

[2] **The supreme judicial city officer** said: “Only now I entirely perceive that You are really the Lord and Creator of the whole material and spiritual world. I also wanted to ask You how You can work at a distance by the power of Your will while You are only personally with us now.”

[3] I said: “This body of Mine, which consists of flesh and blood just like yours and which is actually called the Son of God, is now indeed here with you and not somewhere else at the same time, but the power of the Spirit of God that goes out of Me fills the whole of infinity and works according to the fundamental will in Me, and this at the moment that the ‘let it be’ is spoken out by Me, which however I do not have to speak out loudly, but only My deepest inner Being. And so everything that you see is basically nothing else than My fixed, unchangeable will.

[4] This characteristic, about which the spirit of your father gave you good information, is also the possession of all pure spirits, and especially My angels who are always ready to serve Me, *but* in a more perfect degree than the less pure and still imperfect spirits.

[5] You cannot understand and perceive this yet because the world still imprisons your soul, but when your soul will be free by My Spirit in him, this now visible world will pass away for you. That means, you always will still be able to see it if you want, but the matter, which is now hard for you everywhere and the powers that abide in it will not be able to resist you in any way. And from your own inner being you will be able to create a world, which will be for you – as long as you want to keep it – an equally perfect foundation to live *in* as now My Earth forms for your body a foundation to live *in* and to be active.

[6] I can show you a small image, and if you will think about this in the right manner you will better understand what I just said to you now. For instance at night you have a very lively dream. In that dream you are completely self-conscious and you are always completely aware that it is only you who are dreaming and not someone else in your place. But you never had a dream in which you did not see any environment where you were and people with whom you often discussed, and this always according to your insight and manner of thinking.

[7] Where is that environment in which you were in your dream, and where and who were the people with whom you spoke or had to do something else? Look, nowhere else than in yourself.

[8] If your soul feels for the greatest part free from the bands of your body, and this for a short time during the sleep of your body, he only can see what lies deeply hidden in him, as if outside of himself in the form in which it is in him. No matter what it is, the soul sees it in full reality before him and in his environment he feels as much at home as when he is awake on this Earth.

[9] The fact that he also can meet people in a dream, partly still living people and partly people who already died, is because the soul of every human being carries in a way an image on a very small scale in himself of all people who ever lived on Earth, live now and who will still live, as well as of the whole spiritual world, exactly as a mirror absorbs outer images in itself without those images being real. Of course, a mirror is only a very weak comparison because it is dead in itself and can therefore only represent dead forms of things that stand before it.

[10] However, the soul is a living mirror. Therefore, he can bring the images that are in him to life and deal with them and act as if they were actually real. Moreover he also has the invaluable advantage to be able to connect without difficulty to the real images via the images that came alive in himself.

[11] However, as long as the soul is still living in this world, this capability is still not perfect in him and he finally does not know himself what he should do with it. But once he will be entirely freed from this world he will be aware in an ever higher degree of what he should do with this capability.

[12] In this regard he is like a young heir who received a lot of goods from his father and does also not know in the beginning what the goods look like and for what he should use them. But in the course of time he will come to know all his goods and also receive the knowledge how to use them and what he should do to make them all useful.

[13] In the same way, this is what will happen to every more or less perfected soul, meaning that he will be more and more aware of what is deeply within him and how he should use what is deeply within him.

[14] With your physical eyes you can see the regions and people of this Earth, as well as all other dead and living objects, as if they were really outside of yourself, but I say to you: all that you see, you only see them in yourself. Your soul only deals with the images of the outer realities that are outside of himself, and not with the realities itself. Only your sense of touch deals with the realities.

[15] You can see a mountain far away, but you do not see the mountain itself, but only an image of it by means of your physical eye which is equipped in such a way that it can take up in itself the big images of reality – or things if you like – on a strongly reduced scale and make it immediately possible for the soul to see it by means of an exceptional artful system of the body.

[16] The body itself does not see anything, and if the body itself would be able to see something, its eyes would not need such artful system. Thus it only exists for the sake of the soul and not for the sake of the body itself. For if you would be able to see the realities in their true dimensions, as they were put out of Myself outside of Me, even a stone as big as a fist would keep you busy for more than a thousand years, for already on its surface you would experience such wondrous exceptional things that you would not be able to separate from it for many years.

[17] In the future, men will invent some instruments for the eyes by which they will see even the smallest things very magnified, and they will be greatly amazed of My power and wisdom. But they nevertheless will not become so advanced to see an ever so small object in its actual size in which it came into existence by Me.

[18] With such instruments they will be able to see the smallest animals, hardly visible for your eyes, and which can be compared to when you see now a very big animal with your eyes. But even if they would see the smallest animal in the huge size of an elephant, such magnification would hardly mean anything compared to the real, true size of such animal as it was put into the world by Me.

[19] This I have told you, so that you will better understand that

the soul can see nothing outside of himself, but sees everything only in himself, and this in the size in which he can more easily view them.

[20] Once the soul will be united with his spirit, he will – if it will please him – be able to see everything in their true size. But I also say to you that even the most perfected angels in Heaven are really shying away from seeing the things created by Me in their true size, and by that to discover My eternal and infinite greatness in everything they can see, feel, think and understand. My dear friend, did you understand something of what I told you?”

78. AN IMAGE OF THE SPIRITUAL DEVELOPMENT OF MAN



HE supreme judicial city officer said: “Lord and Master, it seems that everything in me becomes wider, and I see the big truth of Your teachings as well as the objects of this Earth in a hazy morning light, but there is still much haze in the lower regions, and I will have to wait for the rising of the sun of the spirit in me. That there must be an infinite greatness in You, even in the smallest of Your creatures, is more than sufficiently proven by Your teaching, because the fantasy and imagination of no human being can never reach that high or that low for us men to imagine such images that can only originate in the infinite wisdom and fullness of power of the one and only true Creator of all things.”

[2] **On this, all those who were present** said: “Lord and Master, we almost feel completely annihilated before Your greatness that You showed us with the greatest of ease by Your words, although only a small part of it. What will grow out of us if we will know You more perfectly in the future?”

[3] **I** said: “Out of you will grow what grows out of a mustard seed, which is a very little seed when it is put in fertile and life bringing soil. It soon will grow as big as a real tree, under which branches even the birds of the sky will take up residence. And that

mustard seed will then be capable to gradually increase its fruit up to infinity – a quality that is not only present in a mustard seed but also in all other seeds.

[4] You are now still very simple seeds. My teaching that I give you is the well fertilized soil in which I sow you Myself, and when you will eagerly absorb the life's power of this teaching, you will also abundantly bear fruit in My Kingdom, for no eye has ever seen, no ear ever heard and no sense organ ever felt what those can expect in My Kingdom who believe in Me, love Me and keep My easy commandments.

[5] But it is already around midday and our bodies need also to be strengthened. So, My dear friend, provide a sufficient quantity of wine and bread and also fish for us to eat, for after the midday meal Me and My disciples will leave you and I will travel further.”

[6] After I had said that, soon everything I asked for was there, and we cheerfully partook of a good midday meal.

[7] After the midday meal, which lasted about 1 hour, the innkeeper and the supreme judicial city officer, as well as the 3 Apollo priests, the 2 Pharisees and the other Jews who were present here, asked Me to stay with them till the next morning.

[8] And I asked My disciples and said: “If you want, we can stay here till tomorrow.”

[9] **The disciples** said: “O Lord, You know that everything is right for us what is right for You. Let us therefore stay here according to the wish of Your new dear friends, for it is already more than 1 hour after midday and we hardly will reach a place from here further to the south.”

[10] **On this, the supreme judicial city officer** said: “O Lord and Master, Your disciples spoke the truth about this, for from here to the next city, which is from here completely in the southeast at the springs of the brook Arnon, it is more than one long day trip, and between here and there stands only at some places a single, very poor shepherd's hut.”

[11] **I** said: “For what concerns the distance it would be possible for Me to reach that city with My disciples, but since you wish in

your heart to be with Me till tomorrow, I also will follow your wish. Therefore, I will stay with you till tomorrow.

[12] But this afternoon is very beautiful and pure. Let us therefore spend this time of the day outside, again on the mountain Nebo. So we will go there immediately.”

79. THE ASCEND AND DESCEND OF THE ANGELS



WHEN I had said that, everyone emptied his cup of wine after which we all stood cheerfully up and went to the mentioned mountain on which – as you already know – Moses, My first great prophet, died.

[2] Within a little half hour we were already on the mountain where the view was now more pleasant than in the morning, for it was now also clear in the whole western region and free from haze, and we could see the whole Jordan Valley and a big part of the Dead Sea and the whole region of the Mountains of the Lebanon, and of course also many cities, places and villages, as well as the old city of David, Bethlehem, and further up Jerusalem.

[3] There was a conversation of about an hour about the history of the Promised Land, and that it must have been one of the most blessed countries on the whole surface of the Earth.

[4] I finally said: “Yes, you are right, but soon things will look very different in this country. Some of you and your children will personally experience that this earthly paradise of the Jews will be changed into a desert. Because since this people did not recognize the time of their big trial and did also not want to recognize it, after the big time of mercy there soon will come another time of judgment, and many Jews will be driven out into the whole world, and many will also flee to you in these 60 old cities.

[5] When you will find people of good will, keep them with you and accommodate them. However, let the stubborn ones go their own way. I will bless the whole environment of this region of yours and make it fertile, so that you can keep big flocks and

cultivate much barley and also wheat. You also will be able to grow vineyards and reap a reasonable quantity of good wine.”

[6] On this, the Pharisee **Barnabas** said: “According to Your word, o Lord and Master, the old prophet was indeed right when he said: ‘The region of Hauran will be trampled down by gentiles, but when the Lord of Glory will walk His feet on it, it will turn green again and become a fertile land.’”

[7] **I** said: “Yes, yes, so it will be, but not yet in general, because before this vast region of Hauran will entirely become a fertile land, a very long time will still be needed. But this highland will be fertile in the whole environment for a few hundred of years in those places that I visited and where I met fertile hearts of men. But when the hearts of men will become hard and dry again, also this region will look like the hearts of the people.”

[8] On this, the Pharisee **Dismas** said: “O Lord and Master, I also read in the Scripture that when You are on the Earth, the Heavens will be open and Your angels will float up and down and serve You. How should we understand this?”


[9] **I** said: “I think that this should not be so difficult to understand for you since you yourselves saw Moses and an angel at his side this morning on this place. Besides, this part of text of the prophet has also another meaning which is actually the only completely true one.

[10] Look, the Kingdom of Heaven, which is actually the Kingdom of God, does not exist in its outer splendor for men, but it is inside man. And those people who have accepted this Kingdom of God within themselves – the Kingdom which I brought to them Myself – are in their heart, which is full of love for Me and their fellowman, firstly Heaven itself that is now open, and secondly the angels themselves, who ascend and decent between Me and them, serving Me in their love.

[11] Because what you call Heaven is as such no Heaven but completely world and was created by Me for the period in which the people must bear their test of freedom, but when you will have taken off your own world together with your flesh, this outer, now

visible world will practically not exist anymore for you. Then you will be inhabitants of a much different world which not I created for you out of Me or out of yourselves, but which will be created for you out of yourselves, and this for everyone according to the kind of love that he has for Me and his fellowman. Just like you, My dear friend and supreme judicial city officer, have heard yesterday evening from the mouth of your father who died already 10 years ago and whom I let appear before you.

80. THE APPEARANCE OF ANGELS

UT to show you that I, if I want, can also let Me serve by My angels who live in My Heaven – the Heaven that penetrates the whole of infinity – I will give you proof of that. Look, I want now that several exalted angels will appear here, and I will call one out of them to serve Me for a short time for your sake, for I Myself do not need the service of an angel or a man. And therefore I want that now immediately a large number of angels will stand around us.”

[2] I hardly had said that when we were surrounded on all sides by a whole legion of angels, some dressed in white, some in blue and some in red garments.

[3] When especially the former pagans and also the Jews and Pharisees saw the angels, they laid their hands on their chest and did not dare to speak from sheer awe for Me and the many angels.

[4] A few angels walked to them and said: “Dear friends and brothers, why are you afraid of us? Do we look so terrifying?”

[5] **The supreme judicial city officer** said: “O dear friends from the Heavens of God, this is not the reason, quite the opposite, so that I must confess that I never even dreamed of such beautiful human forms. The Lord, who stays with us, is clearly also your Lord. Otherwise you would not have suddenly obeyed His will, for I could have called you with my will during the time of my life, and most probably not one of you would have appeared before me.

But therefore, the Lord is and remains the Lord and is by that everything in all, and Heaven and Earth are subject to His will. Only the great blindness of men can and also will not recognize what kind of great mercy the Lord has shown to them in this time.”

[6] **Now an angel came closer to the supreme judicial city officer – it was the archangel Raphael whom you know well – and he said to the supreme judicial city officer:** “You have spoken rightly and truthfully, but that which is not there yet, will come more and more in the course of time, for believe me, that we, as you can see us here, and numberless many others who are like us, were never inactive, and certainly not in this time.

[7] We travel around the whole Earth and try the hearts of the people to see whether they are capable to accept in themselves the life bringing mercy of the Lord. When we find such hearts, we strengthen them, and when the word of the Lord comes to them, it is quickly accepted with great joy and full of faith.

[8] So I also came to you before and I strengthened you according to the will of the Lord, and when the Lord came to you now Himself, you quickly and easily recognized Him.

[9] We do not need to show ourselves to men while we perform this work, since we possess the power and the might from the Lord to be useful to men in such a way that the free will of man would by that not suffer any force or harm. However, now that you have recognized the Lord and have accepted Him in your hearts our visible appearance does not exert any force on your whole mind and you can speak with us as you do with each other.”

[10] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “Dear and exalted friend from the Heavens of God, if in the future I would need your visible presence for something important in name of the Lord, and I would call you to appear before me, would you then really also appear before me?”

[11] **Raphael said:** “If it will be necessary, in the name of the Lord, always when you will call me, but I would only appear to you, and only to your fellowmen if my appearance would not compel their faith anymore. And you can trust what I have told

now you. And today and the following night you will see, by permission of the Lord, that I will give you many proofs that I can serve you in many different things.”

[12] Then Raphael stepped a few paces back again, and I Myself asked to supreme judicial city officer and the others if they were sufficiently satiated by the presence of the many angels.

[13] And **they all** said: “Lord, Your will be done, for we all are convinced now that the prophets did not prophecy one little sign *of a letter* in vain about You. Every word about You was even literally and truly fulfilled up to now.”


[14] Then **I** firstly said to the archangel Raphael: “You will remain visible with us till I will give you a sign according to My will to go somewhere else.”

[15] And Raphael thanked Me for this task.

[16] Then **I** said to the many other angels: “You can go now again to where My will and My wisdom has assigned a work for you to do.”

[17] On this, all the other angels suddenly disappeared.

81. THE ACTIVITIES OF THE ANGELS

 **UT Raphael** stayed and he suddenly dressed himself in a dark grey coat, and his feet were clothed with shoes. His head was covered with a Jewish hat that was made as usual of silk or camel hair in an arbitrary but typically somewhat light color. And so he was not a noticeable figure anymore to anyone.

[2] **I** said to the supreme judicial city officer: “Go to him, shake hands and greet him as a friend and brother, and convince yourself that also he has now flesh, skin and bones.”

[3] The supreme judicial city officer did immediately what I had advised him and he was greatly surprised that this angel spirit was now entirely as an earthly human being among them. He asked Raphael to come very close to him, which Raphael did at once and he took place next to him on a lawn.

[4] **Now also the Apollo priest went to Raphael, greeted him and said:** “You will not be able to greatly rejoice in me, for I have been an idol worshipper as priest for a long time. Now I have also recognized the one and only true God and Lord, and as far as it will be in my power I will strive in the future to wipe away the whole worship of idols.”

[5] **Raphael said to him:** “And I will help you, and if you lack power, I will support you with mine. You can trust on that, for I was already with you before you recognized the Lord, and I made your heart receptive. Later I will be with you again and do the preliminary work among you gentiles. For you can believe me that we are not inactive when the Lord Himself put His hands to the work. And we, perfected angel spirits, are so-called as if the fingers on the hand of the Lord, and those fingers are active with everyone at each moment as long as he undertakes a work with his hands. So trust the promise of the Lord and I will not forsake you. Do you believe that?”

[6] **Then the supreme judicial city officer said:** “Can you also do what the Lord Himself can do? But of course with permission of the Lord.”

[7] **Raphael said:** “My dear friend and brother, this was still a very human question from your mouth. None of us angels from the Heavens are capable, just as little as you men on Earth, to accomplish anything out of ourselves. But I already told you that we are in a certain way the fingers on His hand and the executioners of His will. Therefore, we are free beings, as if not limited by anything, being an outflow ourselves of the divine power and we can therefore accomplish all that this power reveals and wills in us, and what we then accomplish is not our work but only that of the Lord.

[8] We are completely independent and also completely free in every respect, but since the greatest completeness exists only and solely in the wisdom and the will of the Lord, it is obvious that not only a human being but especially an angel spirit – who is actually also only a human being – will be more and more independent and

free according to the measure that he made the wisdom and the will of the Lord as his own. I can even give you an earthly example of this. And so look:

[9] You are here a prominent supreme judicial city officer and you not only have authority over this one city but also over 14 other cities. That power over the life and death of people was given to you by the emperor, completely free and without having to give an account. But how did you actually receive this significant earthly power?

[10] Look, I will explain to you. By your studies of law you clearly showed at the severe exams in Rome that you made the will of the emperor as your own, in such a way that you made your own will completely subordinate to the emperor's will that you came to know through the laws by which you then became a totally new man whom you were not at the beginning of your studies. Since you deeply absorbed the law of the emperor, and so also his will, so much so that your old, apparently free will was bound with fixed shackles and chains by the emperor's new will in you, you did not lose anything, but on the contrary you won a lot more, for with your own old will, you always would have remained a slave of the imperial will, but since you made the will of the emperor as your own, you yourself became completely free, can do what you want and you do not have to give an account to anyone. And if someone would not follow your will, you have from the emperor the *ius gladii*¹ in your hand, and by the power and authority of the emperor you can force the stubborn ones to be obedient.

[11] And look, the more you strive to fulfill the will of the emperor as accurately as possible, about which the emperor can be informed in a very short time, the emperor will give you a higher, and qua sphere of influence, a more extensive office in which you will be able to act even more freely than now. And so you constantly can work yourself up till you finally will be called to the palace of the emperor and will order and act from there as if you

¹ Latin for 'the right of the sword', or the right to decide over life or death.

were almost the emperor himself. Now ask yourself how you received such great power – and the answer in yourself can impossibly be a different one than: ‘I entirely denied my old human will, so much so that nothing is left of it, except that by that old will I very zealously strived to make the will of the emperor completely as my own.’

[12] And look now, it is exactly the same with us, perfected angel spirits. We also have our own, completely free will, yet it is infinitely more limited than the completely free will of the Lord Himself.

[13] And the more we make the will of the Lord as our own, as if it is our own will itself, the more free might, power and authority will be our own, and we can then also accomplish everything and bring forth what the Lord Himself can accomplish and bring forth.

[14] But now you will also realize yourself that we are not the ones who can do that, but only the Lord in and through us.

[15] If someone in your district has robbed and killed, and was then caught and brought before you, you will sentence him and also let him be killed. With this, you have acted rightly because you acted according to the will of the emperor, and by that you are just like the emperor *ex lege*¹. However, the robber and murderer acted according to his own will and by that he perished.

[16] Do you now understand how we also, angel spirits, possess the might and authority to do everything what the Lord Himself does, freely and without giving an account?”

82. PROOF OF RAPHAEL’S POWER



In this, the supreme judicial city officer said: “Listen, my heavenly, very wise friend, by your explanation it has become now so clear to me that I cannot and will not ask any further questions about it during my whole life, and from your wisdom, which is the same as the wisdom of the Lord, I also can

¹ Latin for ‘above the law’.

see that you can do everything what the Lord Himself can do. Your help will therefore, if the Lord will allow, be very useful in all my work in His name.”

[2] **On this, I said to the supreme judicial city officer:** “Well, My dear friend, how do you like My heavenly servant?”

[3] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “Lord and Master, he speaks exactly as You Yourself could speak out of him, and from this I recognize very clearly that he must be a high servant of Your endless divine glory and majesty. I also believe without any doubt that by Your wisdom and Your will in him he can accomplish everything what You Yourself can achieve and accomplish, that means seen from my human point of view. And I am completely convinced that Your wisdom and Your will must extend endlessly much deeper and further than even the most enlightened intellect with which all Your angel spirits can see and understand.”

[4] **I said:** “My dear friend, it is not your flesh that inspired you but your spirit out of Me from the beyond. So you also, strife to make My will as your own as you made the will of the emperor as your own, then you soon and easily will ever more unite with your spirit out of Me from the beyond, which is My love, wisdom and power, and then you also will be able to work as this angel spirit whose name is Raphael. You have of course not the slightest idea of what he can accomplish, but a few proofs will teach you.

[5] **Ask him – but something reasonable – to perform a sign before your eyes, in order to make you all realize of what My power and My will are capable of through him. Then he will not hesitate to be of service to you and to you all.”**

[6] **Then the supreme judicial city officer said:** “O Lord and Master, I suddenly find myself so stupid and dumb among you that I really do not know now what kind of reasonable sign I can ask of him. It would therefore be better if You, o Lord and Master, would be so merciful to tell him what he should do to clarify our concept of his power.”

[7] **On this, I said:** “O no, My friend, not so, for My Raphael is filled with everything that I will and wish. And I will withdraw My

special will and My power, so that he himself, out of his wealth from Me, which he made as his own, can work and will as he wishes, so that only after that you will be able to see what My Kingdom in all the angels and also in men – being totally free, as if independent out of itself – can accomplish, without it being necessary to lead My numberless angel spirits and also men on this Earth at the leash of My almighty will. So choose freely what seems right to you, then he will immediately execute what you want.”

[8] Now the supreme judicial city officer kept silent for a moment, rubbed with his one hand over his forehead and scratched with his other a little after his ear, for he still could not well determine what kind of truly reasonable request he should bring forward. He finally remembered what I promised him – still in the house of the innkeeper – that the region of this very poor plain would become green and produce much grass, grain, fruit trees and even vineyards. And he literally pointed this out to Raphael.

[9] **Raphael** tapped him friendly on the shoulder and said: “My dear friend and brother, with this you truly asked something very intelligent from me, and your wish will be satisfied immediately.”

[10] **Then the supreme judicial city officer, who could not turn away his eyes from Raphael’s face, said:** “No, no, my dear heavenly friend, it does not have to be done immediately. I am already satisfied when it happens gradually with the help of our poor human zeal.”

[11] **On this, Raphael said:** “Dear friend and brother, have you never heard that when someone asks something from a person and he gives it immediately, that he gives twice as much and still more compared to when he gives what was asked of him only bit by bit, according to whether he has spare time and opportunity?”

[12] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “This is of course true, and we Romans have in our civilian law also such statement, but it is not always carried out in such a way.”

[13] **Raphael said:** “Dear friend and brother, this is how the citizens of this world used to do because men’s will and the power

to carry it out are still full of many weaknesses, but for us, citizens of the Heaven of the Lord, this is no more the case, and what we wish and will is already there at the same time, and as perfect as possible. Stand up now and look at this region a little, then you will be completely convinced of the truth of what I just told you.”

83. THE CHANGED REGION AT MOUNT NEBO



HE supreme judicial city officer stood up and looked at the environment in every direction and did not recognize it anymore, for he saw a great number of very luxurious, completely ripe grain fields. Also pastures with densely grown grass which extended almost beyond vision. And around the city big gardens that were full of the noblest fruit trees. Also Mount Nebo, on which we were, had become completely green and the most beautiful fig trees and vineyards grew around it. He also saw, somewhat below the city, a rather big pond out of which streamed several brooks in different directions.

[2] When **the supreme judicial city officer** saw all this, he slapped his hands out of amazement above his head, as well as all the others – the innkeeper, the 3 Apollo priests, the Pharisees and the Jews – and he said: “O Lord, this is almost infinitely too much, and it really goes beyond all my imaginations. What will the people, who live in this city and in the rather vast region around it, say about this phenomenon? Impossibly another thought can come up in them except that one or the other god, who became merciful, had done all this by the prayer of one of his priests. But I will very soon inform the people as to how and by what all this came into being.

[3] But now I ask You, o Lord, not to perform a second sign, not for me, neither for this whole region, for this sign made me, apart from my great amazement, also very embarrassed. And probably even today and tomorrow there will be so many questions about this, coming from every direction, that we will not be able to give them the right answer.”

[4] I said: “This will of course be the case, but I will also take care that you will not lack the right answers, and all the people of this vast region will return home with joy and gratitude and will gather what has grown on each one his land. But with the help of your many subordinates you can make a law yourself to seriously urge the people not to make a sensation about it, because by that they will attract many greedy, jealous people from faraway regions, and they finally will have to take up arms to keep the greedy enemies away from the blessed borders of this region.

[5] And also you, My disciples and you Jews, should not make a sensation about it in the Promised Land, for many would not believe you but rather laugh at you and persecute you. Many others, weak Jews, would believe you, and through you, also believe in Me, but that belief would not have a firm basis for them because firstly by their own additions they would all too soon make it more sensational, just like they are doing with all their superstition, and secondly such manner of spreading it further would look much like the old superstition and would therefore only bring about a very doubtful belief, for when in the course of time, they later will come into this region to convince themselves of the miracle, they would say that also the true diligence and zeal of men can accomplish that.

[6] But later you can mention it in a wise manner to those who already completely accepted My teaching and have by that entered My Kingdom. Those will believe you, but will also say: ‘Yes, what can be impossible for the Almighty? If we have Him, we have everything through Him.’

[7] So remain in the first place with My teaching, and only after that you can proceed to My signs, which will in the course of time hardly be believed, no matter how true they are, because the reason of men will only stop criticizing these things when they can be initiated in the fundamental cause of its existence, and that initiation can for many not happen here on Earth but only in the beyond.

[8] Follow this advice of Mine, then you will by that make good

progress on even roads. Otherwise you can come across many stumbling blocks. So good is good, but better is also eternally better, and the best is that which I am telling you.”

[9] Then they all gave their word that they would loyally follow that advice, and the supreme judicial city officer asked Me if he also should inform the emperor about it.

[10] I said to him: “Leave the emperor out of this for the moment, but in a year you can inform My friend Agricola in Rome about it, and at the right time he will also pass it on to the emperor to your advantage. But for the moment it is sufficient to only instruct your district. And if a neighbor from the northern cities will come to you, he himself will tell you who has done this. You can inform the commander Pellagius about it, for in military aspect he is also in authority over this city, and he knows Me.”

84. RAPHAEL’S PROOF OF HIS SPEED



WHEN I asked the supreme judicial city officer if at home with his mother he did not possess something he would like to have here.

[2] **The supreme judicial city officer** said: “Yes, indeed, Lord and Master. But at the time that I was still in Rome it was so well hidden that despite our zealous searching we were not able to find it back. It is our old patrician letter¹, still from the time of Julius Caesar, in a golden case. It was very important to me. Not so much for my sake but rather for the sake of my younger brothers and sisters.”

[3] **Raphael, who sat next to him, said:** “Look at this. Here is your old patrician letter. Look at it closely to see if it is the right one.”

[4] **The astonished supreme judicial city officer** opened the case and found his patrician letter rolled up in it, which he knew all too well, and he asked **Raphael:** “Well, how was that possible to you?”

[5] **Raphael** said: “Look, among other things, it is also a quality of

¹ The letter probably stated that they were members of the privileged class in Rome (patricians).

us that we can move ourselves from one place to another and return from there. And so at this same moment I was in Rome and am now back here.”

[6] **The supreme judicial city officer asked Raphael again:** “If I would not well know the case and also the patrician letter that is in it, I would think that you created it by your power, just as you made this region to flourish in one moment, but I either have to completely give up that thought or the genuineness of this case and letter.

[7] You told me that you, perfected angel spirits, have also the ability to move yourself in one moment from one place to another and return from there. Now I also believe that, but you were not one moment absent here, and that is why I am of the opinion that you sent to Rome another helpful angel spirit who is close to you and he also could have brought you this case fast enough.”

[8] **Raphael said:** “Oh no, my dear friend, I really did this myself. Look, just like all the other things for what concerns space, also time can be divided in very small pieces, and this in such a way that the period of time, which you call a moment¹, can be divided in an endless series of still shorter periods of time. Such small piece of time means for you and your ability of understanding of course as good as nothing, but for us, perfected angel spirits, this is not so, for in such very small piece of time I can move myself numberless times from here very far away and return while you would never notice that during all that time I was even one moment absent, and those on that most distanced spot to where I went, would miss my absence as little as you. Do you know how fast a thought is?”

[9] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “Yes, my dear heavenly friend, I can somehow imagine, especially from the teaching of the sage Plato.”

[10] **Then Raphael said again:** “What is the name of the place that you know more or less personally?”

¹ Literally: ‘twinkling of an eye’ (the time of a twinkling of an eye), translated in English as ‘moment’.

[11] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “Britannica, for I once traveled to that place, actually over the water, with my father who was then still living, which trip to there and back to Rome took more than 2 full years.”

[12] **Raphael said:** “How long would it take for you to travel to that place with your thoughts?”

[13] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “Yes, dear friend, I am there and here at the same time in one moment, and even if I had to go in thoughts a thousand times further away, I believe that I would not need more time for it.”

[14] **Then Raphael said:** “Look, my dear friend and brother, that same quality which you possess in thoughts, we, perfected angel spirits possess of course in a much more perfect degree in the Kingdom of God in reality, and as a pure and free spirit you also will in the Kingdom of God possess this same quality as I have.

[15] Yes, my dear friend, the Kingdom of God extents endlessly in all directions. If we, perfected spirits, would not be able to move faster than you men on this Earth, things would look very bad in carrying out the will of the Lord on the very faraway places of His creations, but since time and space are for us perfected spirits no obstacles at all, also the order of the Lord in the whole of infinity can never be disturbed in the least. Do you understand this, my dear friend and brother?”

[16] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “Well, a little better than before, but by far I still will not be able to fully perceive that mystery of movement.”

85. THE SHINING STONE OF THE SUN



In this Raphael said: “My dear friend and brother, look at the sun that is now already quite far in the west. How far do you think that star is away from here? I know that you do not know that, and even if I would give you the distance in your earthly way of measurement of the field way, you would not understand the number because you do not know the Arabian

system of measurement and such big number cannot be expressed in your Roman figures. But you know how fast an arrow can cover a distance of 50 to 100 paces. It will not need much more than 4 moments, and so the flight of an arrow is the fastest movement on Earth that you know. Look, an arrow that is shot from the Earth to the sun would need for such trip from here to the sun a time of almost 50 years to reach the sun, that is if it would be able to fly that far and if the attraction of the Earth would not hinder it.

[2] If a person would walk, it is obvious that he would need a few hundred years. And how much time do you think I need to go from here to the sun and return?"

[3] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** "Yes, my dear heavenly friend, as I see it now, you will not need more time for that trip as from here to Rome and back."

[4] **Raphael said:** "You have answered correctly, and look, while I am talking to you now, I already went to the sun and came back. As proof I brought you a little souvenir from the sun."

[5] **Then Raphael grabbed with his hand in the pocket of his coat, took out a stone that shined almost as bright as the sun and showed it to the supreme judicial city officer:** "Look, such stones you cannot find on the Earth but you can find a lot of them of different size on the big celestial body of the sun, especially in its middle belt which you will also come to know later.

[6] The inhabitants of that big celestial body use such stones to illuminate their rooms that are dark inside, because the real celestial body of the sun is actually only dark. The light of the sun that you can see develops itself on its atmospheric surface and it shines only externally in its full strength. Towards the real fixed celestial body of the sun it is hardly stronger illuminated than what you can see on the surface of this Earth.

[7] So take also this stone, then you can illuminate your rooms during the night for 10 years, but after 10 years the light will decrease more and more. But if you want to use it longer than 10 years as light, then expose it every day to the rays of the sun. Then it will satiate itself with it, and it will serve you as light

during the night instead of no matter what good lamp. But after 100 years, when this stone will be too much absorbed by the acid of the air of the Earth, it will be completely unsuitable to give light.”

[8] Then the supreme judicial city officer took the stone in deep awe, thanked for it, wrapped it in a clean cloth and put it in the pocket of his coat.

[9] This was of course also noticed by **My disciples** who secretly envied the Romans and they said to themselves: “We were already so long with Him but He never performed such wonders for us. As soon as He meets the Romans, He performs His greatest wonders, and we can only watch them among the gentiles, and He explains them personally or by the angel Raphael. But when once near Jerusalem our well known pious Nicodemus asked Him how the Kingdom of God looked like, He answered him: ‘As long as you are not reborn in the spirit, you will not be able to understand the things of Heaven, for you do not understand the things of this Earth which you see, then how will you understand the heavenly things that you cannot see?’ Why did He not also say this to the gentiles, and why actually to the Jews?”

[10] And so the disciples grumbled secretly among each other. And I stood up, went to them and said: “What are you secretly grumbling about among each other? Do I not allow you to be witnesses of all the things I am doing among the gentiles, and did I not show you, only 2 days ago, the reason why I can show and explain more to the gentiles than to you?”

[11] You are not in the least familiar with the science of nature, but the Romans have much and good knowledge about it and can very well distinguish the laws and relationship between the things in nature. But all this is lacking to you Jews, and this is already so since the time of the first judges who also knew how everything worked together in nature, especially from Moses’ 2 books that you rejected. And instead of that, you made a cabala¹ where the

¹ Cabala: modern system of Jewish theosophy and mysticism.

content is worse than the content *of the writings* of no matter what pagan philosopher. But I do not hinder you to listen to such higher explanations and observe such deeds. How long will I still have to bear you till you will become more reasonable?"

[12] **Simon Judah** said: "O Lord and Master, please be patient with us. Again we can see that we have sinned against You again."

[13] **I** said: "It is all right, but leave such grumbling aside in the future."

[14] The disciples wrote this into their heart and from then on they were much more discreet and calm at each occasion, and I left them again and went back to the supreme judicial city officer and Raphael.

86. THE ANIMAL MIRACLE OF RAPHAEL



AFTER that, the discussion was more about natural things, and in the course of the conversation our innkeeper made the remark that this region possessed now the finest grass of the whole environment that can hardly be found on any other place on Earth. But the flocks of the inhabitants of this city and environment were very small, and even if the flocks were 100 times bigger they still would find food in abundance.

[2] On this, **I** said: "Your flocks could also be increased in a miraculous manner but this would be even more eye-catching to the people than all the other things, because everyone who has now 10 sheep in the field would be very surprised if his shepherd would suddenly bring home 1,000 sheep instead of 10, and the owner of the sheep would not even be able to give shelter to them because his sheep stable has only space for 20 sheep at most. So search and buy a great number of sheep and other animals. In 2 years, counted from now, they will multiply in a good manner. You can easily keep the grain when you reap it, for you have sufficient space for it, but you will hardly succeed in keeping the house animals, and therefore we will leave everything as it is now.

[3] You can see that rather big pond from here, and close to that

one, there are another 6 with which the whole environment can be sufficiently irrigated. In the deep waters of the ponds you will also find a great number of fishes which the inhabitants of this city and environment can use for their livelihood. The fishes from the pond, which we can see from here, will however be the property of the supreme judicial city officer, the innkeeper, the Apollo priests and the few Jews, so that each one of you that I just mentioned will have the right to fish one fourth from the pond. But let no one do it excessively, but only as many as he needs, so that no one will disadvantage the other by being very greedy. The fishes in the pond are of a very noble kind by which the water of the pond will not get dirty.”

[4] Then the 4 parties thanked Me for this gift and vowed that they accurately would keep that precept. And the supreme judicial city officer would also take care to establish that same order for the other ponds and also maintain them.

[5] While several were still discussing among each other about this miracle as to how it was possible to immediately fill the ponds with fishes, **Raphael** stood up and said to the supreme judicial city officer and the innkeeper: “This is for the almighty will of the Lord in us as easy to do as to make a desert turn green in one moment, for it is the same to immediately call animals into existence, no matter of what kind, or numberless grasses, plants, kinds of grain and fruit trees.

[6] Because whatever a spirit – from the will of the Lord – imagines in himself and wants it to exist, it is there at once. But the thoughts of a pure angel spirit are of course much more different compared to the thoughts of a human being.

[7] Man can only think about and imagine the outer forms and make all kinds of fantasies about them, but what the forms from the smallest to the greatest must contain inside, and how they should be build to be capable of living, no man can imagine. And that is why he also cannot direct his will in such a way to bring the forms to life and make them active with the spirit of his will. But a perfected angel spirit can do that, and a less perfected one can also

do that to a lesser degree.

[8] To speak with you in an earthly manner, my dear supreme judicial city officer, that difference is almost the same as between a sculptor who is formed in all the rules of the art and another person who is possibly also capable of cutting out a very imperfect image from a piece of wood – but what a difference between such image and the one from the hand of a skilled artist.

[9] And if there are already on this Earth such various degrees in the development of human beings, how much more will this be the case in the Kingdom of the spirits.

[10] Look, at present an elephant is the biggest but also the most intelligent animal on Earth and can, when he is well trained by men, be made useful for all kinds of servile work. There was a time when these kinds of animals lived also in this region.

[11] But since these regions became in the course of time more and more infertile by the many wrongdoings of men, that animal traveled further to the south to those regions where it could find the right rich food for itself. However, as a result of the departure of that animal these regions lost many important earthly advantages.

[12] But if you wish, my dear friend and brother supreme judicial city officer, I can provide you in one moment with a male and a female, and you surely will be able to find enough food for them. Now look down to the environment of the pond, and you will already see a male and a female there.

[13] Later you can send your helpers to them with a few breads. Then they will follow the helpers to your own stable which has enough space for these animals. Then mow the grass of the big field which is yours. Let it dry and bind it in bundles. Then let the helpers go out with the animals, and they themselves will bring the hay in the barn. And so you will be able to gradually train them for several other works.”

[14] **The supreme judicial city officer thanked Raphael for this miraculous present and said:** “A few of my helpers know very well how to train these animals, for they even brought such animals

from India to Rome, and the emperor kept them a certain time to take care of these animals. After that, they were of service to my father and his servants who are also loyal to me here.”

87. THE SURPRISED SERVANTS CATCH AND TAME THE ELEPHANTS



AFTER this conversation, the sun went under, and we stood up and went again to the city to our innkeeper.

[2] Soon we were back in our guestroom. Also Raphael came with us, and when we went to sit at the table the innkeeper asked Me if he also could set a table for the occasional guest Raphael.

[3] I said: “Of course, because for this time he is now also enveloped with a body that was taken from the air of this Earth, and he equally needs strengthening from the Earth just like Me, the Lord Myself. The food that he will take will of course be converted in a much different manner than for a natural human being, but this does not matter. In the same way he will also take food and drink with us, but considerably much more than us, for which you should be prepared beforehand. But let now bread and wine be set on the table, and only later the fishes and a well prepared, fried lamb.”

[4] **The innkeeper** said: “O Lord and Master, a lamb cannot be because I do not have anymore. But I still have about 30 sheep. If the shepherd has driven them home already I can immediately order to slaughter the youngest.”

[5] On this, I said: “Do not be unnecessarily worried about that. You will find in the kitchen an already slaughtered lamb that is ready to be fried. And so, not one of your 30 sheep will have to be slaughtered, for except of the male they are all with young and they will double your sheep flock within 2 weeks.”

[6] Then the innkeeper took immediately care of the bread and the wine and went then to the kitchen to look at the lamb that was made ready to fry. He was not that much surprised anymore since

he saw the other miracles, and this miracle was also very understandable to him. But his kitchen personnel was all the more surprised, as well as his wife, because while we were on the mountain she was in the kitchen garden to gather fragrant herbs for the fish that would be made ready in the evening, and she was really startled when before her eyes the kitchen garden, which was next to the inn and which used to look very meager, became suddenly green again and gave an abundance of everything that was needed for the house.

[7] The woman did not know how to explain to the innkeeper how she was confused, but after a while she thought that no one else could have accomplished that except the miraculous guest who was present. And she also, as well as all her house personnel, would now consider and honor Him as a true God, and this all the more because also the 3 Apollo priests had submitted themselves to this God. Then she immediately started to prepare the fish and fry the lamb.

[8] While we were strengthening ourselves in the dining room, the 2 loyal servants of the supreme judicial city officer, whom he had called on the mountain, came to us almost out of breath and related about all the things they had seen and experienced. They were mostly surprised about the big pond that suddenly existed on the place where there was only a small spring before that gave only water on certain periods of time.

[9] **One of the servants** said to the supreme judicial city officer: “And, o strict lord, lord, another great miracle: 2 completely fully grown elephants are grazing near the pond. Those 2 animals will probably have escaped from a Persian or even an Indian caravan because of lack of food to satisfy themselves in this place where through a miracle of God all kinds of plants, grasses and trees are abundantly growing. Those animals are actually grazing on the piece of grassland that belongs to you and you have the right to take these rare and valuable animals into your possession. As it is known to you, we both very well know how to control such animals. If you wish we will go there and quickly accommodate

them in your big stable. And once they will be accommodated there, we will see to it that they will never escape from us.”

[10] Then **the supreme judicial city officer** said: “Do it, I will know how to completely reward you for this.”

[11] Then the 2 servants instantly provided themselves in the inn with several barley breads, and with joy they went directly outside where the 2 animals were grazing. When they came near the animals, they talked to them in their own way. The animals became attentive, and the smell of the breads attracted them to the servants. At once they gave pieces of bread to them and went to the city while on the way, that was not far, they gave the 2 animals from time to time a piece of bread. And we soon saw from our guestroom through the open windows how the 2 very big elephants followed closely the 2 servants of the supreme judicial city officer as meek lambs. And in this way they were brought to the big stable while the many fellow servants, helpers and inhabitants of the city were surprisingly watching. In the stable they immediately provided a good quantity of food and water for the animals.

[12] These 2 animals stayed directly in the stable and allowed the 2 servants to take care of them. The other servants however, could not yet dare to come near the 2 animals. However, this became possible later.

[13] 5 years later our supreme judicial city officer received through intercession of the commander Pellagius and the supreme governor of the city Cyrenius a much higher position in the big city of Damascus where he protected the Christians, and he gave great privileges to them as much as he could. At this opportunity he gave these 2 animals and the 2 servants to the emperor as a present, about which he was very glad, and out of gratitude he entrusted to him, as well as to his descendants, supreme authority and personal management over that city where he did so many good works.

[14] I am mentioning this casually.

88. THE BLISS OF THE PERFECTED SPIRITS



UR evening meal could be prepared quickly and we began to eat. At this occasion we were in a good mood and cheerful, and My disciples had a lot of things to tell about all the villages and cities – about My teaching and deeds. Also Raphael received a good testimony from the mouth of My disciples, for they also discussed a lot about what he had performed in My company.

[2] The Roman and the supreme judicial city officer, as well as the innkeeper and his son, the 2 Pharisees and the few Jews liked it so much that the **supreme judicial city officer** said: “O Lord and Master, as far as I am concerned, if I could be continuously in this kind of situation on this Earth as I am now in Your company and in the company of Your heavenly servant, I would immediately give up the still much greater bliss of Your Heavens, for to be very close to You and to be able to speak with You I consider now as the highest Heaven.

[3] When we have You, we do not have to know in detail about the things of nature at all, for we already know that all this – from the smallest to the biggest and from the first to the last and from the alpha to the omega – are only Your fixed thoughts and ideas, brought to life by Your will and by Your Spirit.”

[4] **I** said: “What you said is very correct and true, and in Heaven it is indeed the highest bliss of all perfected spirits if they can be with Me, can talk with Me and go along with Me.

[5] But this very great bliss is actually not the result of My very modest and simple personality in which I am a human being just like you, and as spirit just like this first archangel Raphael. But the most important bliss of the perfected spirits comes from the fact that they ever more completely, clearer and deeper can recognize My endless many works that are without number or measure.

[6] Look, friend, it is almost like with people from time to time on this Earth who have a true sense of higher arts and sciences and are pleased with that. Suppose that you heard about a great architect

and visual artist whose works were greatly admired by all people. When you hear that, you really want to personally come to know the great artist, and since the means for you to travel are not lacking, you soon go on your way to that faraway country where the artist lives and where he exposes and makes his works on a large scale.

[7] After some time of traveling you then reach the place where the artist lives. After that, with little trouble you soon come into contact with the artist about whom you made all kinds of great imaginations during your trip, like: ‘as a human being among other people he will make himself known in a special exalted appearance’. But when you meet him in his village, you discover that the artist is a very simple and modest man whose personality does not show in the least what lies hidden in his inner being. Then you have a very friendly conversation with him but you also think by yourself: ‘It is hardly possible that there can be such creative greatness in this very modest and simple personality about whom you were told such great things by the most intelligent men’. But you are nevertheless happy because you are convinced in yourself that you are in the presence of the greatest architect and visual artist, and that you can speak with him about all kinds of things that he made.

[8] Finally the artist says to you: ‘Since you took the trouble to visit me and to personally come to know me, I want to take you to a very big city that is not far away from here, where you really will have the opportunity to enjoy my works instead of this house of mine that shows only little of me.’

[9] Burning from curiosity you go with the artist, who became very friendly to you but who during the whole trip still looks like a very modest and simple man to you. While you come closer to the big city with the great artist, and when already from a big distance you can see the most beautiful buildings, temples, palaces and castles, your fantasy about the artist who escorts you becomes greater, just like his works in that city become bigger as you come closer to the city. His personal simplicity disappears in the same

measure as his inner, spiritual greatness becomes clearer to you through his works.

[10] When you arrive then completely into the city, the one construction miracle after the other – bigger, more artful and more daring – makes you really speechless from admiration, and your admiration for the artist who is escorting you becomes moreover extremely greater when you see that in that big city that all the people, big and small, are greeting him in a most kind and respectful manner.

[11] Now tell Me, My dear friend, if your former ideas about the artist did not change completely and made your mind happier after seeing his great works.”

89. THE CREATION IS INSCRUTABLE



HE supreme judicial city officer said: “Yes, Lord and Master, You gave a very striking image that I experienced in my youth myself – although not on such a large scale – for I traveled with my father, who was then still living, through the northern region of the actual Roman empire and came near Venice. There I saw a beautiful palace building that was almost finished and according to the rules of art, and there was also a strong desire in me to personally know the daring architect.

[2] Then I soon went with my father into his home and in his sculpture workshop, and in the company of my father I met the architect in person. He was however also a very simple and modest man, a Greek who was born on the small island of Rhodes, and by far it could not be seen that he possessed the ability to *even* count the fingers of his hand one by one. But once we spoke with him, it could directly be noticed that apart from the old arithmetics of Euclid¹ he was also familiar with several other arts and sciences, and I had then really a great respect for this great architect and artist.

¹ Euclid: Greek geometer (circa 300 B.C.) – founded a school in Alexandria.

[3] But now I still do not know, o Lord and Master, what You actually meant to say with this excellently chosen image regarding Yourself.”

[4] I said: “My dear friend and brother, nothing else except that your supposed great bliss in My company and that of the archangel Raphael has not yet reached the highest degree, and it will not reach it before you will come to know all My constructions and creations ever more closely and better. You know now that there is a tremendous great quality in Me to create, and you make the greatest possible imaginations about it since you saw me performing these few signs, but your imaginations will surely be much different when your inner sight regarding Me will become much wider and elevated by a deeper perception of My works. For only then you will see in an ever greater light what is truly divine in Me, although *you will* eternally never *see it* in the supreme final light that I Myself am in My inner being, for the reason that this is impossible for every spirit, created out of Me – even in his highest possible perfection.

[5] Now of course you think by yourself: ‘Then how? Because then the highest and perfected spirit will remain eternally nothing compared to You.’

[6] Yes, I tell you that you are right in this. Even though everything is possible to Me, but a second I, who would be exactly like Me, I cannot create, as less as a second infinite space or a second eternally lasting time. And so, also the most perfected angel spirit can finally never reach the complete strength of the light in Me, nor the borders of the infinite space or count the hours of the infinite length of time. Although he can make his imaginations ever larger about these 3 things, but he will nevertheless eternally never reach the end of it.

[7] You see the light of the sun and you consider its light already as the strongest what your imagination can grasp. Then how would it be if I would place before you at the firmament, instead of that one sun, suddenly 1,000 suns of the same size and strength of light? Will that light then not fall on this Earth 1,000 times

stronger?”

[8] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “O, Lord and Master, do not do that, for especially during the summer we have more than enough light from that one sun. If 1,000 suns would appear at the firmament, all creatures on this Earth would burn up in a very short time, and after that, also the whole Earth itself. For I already saw – actually in Alexandria – what the light of the sun can accomplish through an archaic hollow mirror. And by means of that one mirror, only that one sun was enlarged about 10 to 20 times, and in the focus its effect is so destructive that it sets everything on fire. Then imagine the effect of 1,000 suns.”

[9] **I said:** “Well yes, you are right in this, and the Earth has more than enough with that one sun, but I only wanted to draw your attention that even the natural light can be intensified into infinity – then how much more the spiritual light. That is why it is also stated in Moses that no created human being can see God in His inner reality and stay alive.”

[10] **The supreme judicial city officer said:** “O, Lord and Master, now I really become afraid in Your presence, for I feel more and more my complete nothingness and Your complete everything in all. And Plato was right when he said: ‘In a vision I saw the hem of God’s garment, everything was changed into light, and I saw myself in it as if completely dissolved into nothing. Only the love for the deity made me to keep my consciousness.’”

[11] **I said:** “The philosopher was right in this, but before his time, but from now on this matter will be different, because for this reason I surrounded Myself with a body to, in the future, no more appear before you as an unfathomable God who cannot be seen but as a human being with whom you can speak and go along with just like you do with each other, and by that I did not only make you My children exactly in My image but also My true friends and brothers.

[12] **With this present of Mine you surely will all be glad, and it will not embarrass you when you will perceive that I, in My eternal, divine qualities, can never be reached.**

[13] But there comes the fried lamb. Let us busy ourselves with that and leave all the rest aside for the moment.”

90. THE MIRACULOUS FEEDING IN THE INN



HE lamb was divided in as many pieces as guests were sitting at the table, and obviously the pieces were a bit small.

[2] **The innkeeper** noticed this himself and asked Me: “Lord and Master, this one lamb is apparently too small for the great number of guests. What do You think if I quickly would prepare another 2 or 3 lambs, because, as I have noticed, this one lamb is hardly enough for our great guest Raphael?”

[3] **I** said: “That will be all right, for as My disciples know, I once satiated a few thousand of people with very few breads and even less fishes, so that they all had more than enough, and after the meal a few baskets with pieces of leftover bread were gathered. And therefore we will have more than enough with this one lamb.”

[4] **The innkeeper** said: “What is good for You, o Lord and Master, is of course also good for me. Only Your will be done always.”

[5] Then also the innkeeper went as usual to sit at our table, but did not dare to take anything of the lamb for himself, for he was afraid that there still would be too little for the others.

[6] Then **I** took a piece from the big platter, put it on his plate and said to him: “Friend, believe what I told you. Before the lamb will be consumed we will be satiated more than enough, and finally the leftovers will be more than enough for all your personnel.”

[7] Then all the guests were provided with the pieces of lamb and ate their fill. And the more they ate, the more they saw that their plate was fuller. Finally they all had so many leftovers that the pieces did not fit anymore on the big platter on which the lamb was set on the table, and another equally big platter had to be taken to put the other pieces on it to transfer them from the table to the kitchen. Then the 2 platters were taken away, and the woman of

the innkeeper with her few daughters and the other kitchen maids could not stop being amazed that this one fried lamb could have produced so many leftovers. They all thanked Me and ate then from the pieces that were left over. And also for the following day there was a complete platter of leftovers.

[8] After we had eaten the lamb and were still sitting at the table with our cups full of wine, the **supreme judicial city officer** asked Me: “O Lord and Master, I understand now a little how You – and Raphael through You – can change a completely bare region into one that is rich in all fruits and plants, and how You were able to put down 2 elephants before me and – as happened yesterday at evening – 14 fierce lions as watchers for the few Jews and Pharisees. It is also not completely unclear to me how You could have immediately changed the water from the cistern into the best Cyprus wine, for these are all things that are easily possible for Your omnipotence.

[9] For this is how I thought: You only have to think it and then to say with Your will: ‘Let it be’, and then, what You called into existence by Your will, is already there, completely finished. For this is what You also had to do when You called the whole Earth into existence out of Yourself, and together with that also gradually everything that is in, on and above it. And when everything was there what You wanted to have on Earth, ready and complete, it was equally possible for You to lay in all plants, animals and human beings the ability to procreate and to multiply, according to the kind of Your creatures that You brought to life.

[10] But with this lamb, things are quite different. There was only one lamb that was set on the table, already well prepared and fried, and when it was divided it became clear that the pieces would obviously be small for all the guests. But when a small piece was put to the mouth, it could not be finished because it was visibly growing in the hand of the one who was eating.

[11] How could the lamb that is dead in itself become bigger in an always well eatable state with his organism that was completely destroyed by the frying, just like a young cedar becomes bigger

from year to year till it becomes a huge tree?

[12] This is not surprising for a cedar, for it has its organic, natural life, and its internal organism is arranged as such, but the organism of a fried lamb can, according to me, almost no more possess the ability to grow from the inside and become bigger. But since the lamb, which we savored, became so much bigger that we were not able to completely finish it, I must openly confess that I really do not understand this miracle of Yours.”

[13] **I** said: “Look, dear friend, these disciples of Mine are with Me for already so long and they saw such exceptional multiplications of food already several times, but they are Jews, and none of them did not even once come upon the idea to specially ask Me about it. And they did not ask Me because in their still often real Jewish blindness they could not discover a difference between one miracle and another that I performed. But you clever Romans discovered a real difference in My miracles, and the sharpness of your reason makes it worth to further discuss it.”

[14] One of My disciples, whose name was **Philippus**, and who otherwise did not so easily open his mouth, said: “O Lord and Master, at some occasions we already so often wanted to ask You more about one or the other thing, which we also did sometimes, but this was never without receiving an admonition. And so from then on we preferred to let someone else ask it and we then listened to what You would say about it, and so we also discovered Your great light in a lot of things and did not have to expect an admonition from You.”

[15] **I** said: “If you would have asked Me these kind of things you would have come through it without any admonition from Me, just like everyone else, but you always asked Me about something which I explained already several times to you all, and that is why you forced Me to ask the question that was somehow unpleasant to you: ‘How long will I still have to bear you before you will become understanding?’”

[16] But look here, with these Romans I am not forced to ask such

question in return, because their cleverness discovers every difference that exists between the one and the other deed that I perform. I previously also accomplished a multiplication of food on a very large scale when I more than sufficiently satiated several thousands of people with few breads and fishes, and before your eyes I also performed a great number of deeds which our Roman would consider as more natural and understandable. Nevertheless, at that time you did not say: ‘Lord and Master, we understand that You filled our nets already several times with fishes, changed very bare regions to become fertile, and at the wedding in Kana in Galilee and in many other places changed water into wine, but how could You change so many breads and fishes, that are dead in itself, in such a way that many thousands were able to sufficiently satiate themselves by them?’

[17] Look, My dear friend Philippus, if you would have asked Me this at that time, you very surely would also have come through it without admonition from Me. But you did not ask Me anything because you do not make any difference between My deeds, and you throw them all in one bag, but our friend here, a real Roman of the purest water, found with the cleverness of his reason a real difference, and I also will explain this to him, without giving him, in return of his question, an admonition which appears to be so unpleasant to you all.

91. THE PROCESS OF DIGESTION IN THE HUMAN BODY



My dear friend and supreme judicial city officer, on your sharp-witted question from your mouth, I will also give you a clear and sharp-witted answer.

[2] Look, there seems to be a clear real difference between the miracles that I perform, but basically there is none. Look, everything that you eat and take into your stomach to strengthen and enliven your body is not as dead as you think. It has 3 parts: firstly a material part that you can see and feel. And when the food is well prepared you can perceive a good taste, and already

beforehand you can also inhale the nice smell with your nose. Look, this is the part that enlivens your body.

[3] When secondly the food comes into the stomach, they are in a way cooked for a second time, and by that, 2 main elements are formed of which one of them – the biggest, to nourish the body, its limbs and muscles through the blood that comes from those 2 elements – is led to all parts of the body that need to be nourished and strengthened.

[4] Once these 2 elements are greatly extracted in the upper stomach from what you ate, and are spread in your body, you become thirsty and you drink. By that, the food comes into the lower, little stomach that is divided into 12 parts. Here, by means of a special fermentation process, the etheric particles are separated from these little cells of the food that you took and are needed to give life to the nerves. That is why you also can call this element ‘nerve spirit’.

[5] The extremely fine ethereal, which we will call ‘substance’, is guided by the spleen along a very hidden way to the heart, and from the heart it passes completely purified into the soul of man. And so also the soul takes of what is related to him, and by that he is nourished and strengthened in all his separate elements that correspond completely to those of the body.

[6] This you can easily notice from the fact that the things you say and conclude are clumsy and disconnected webs of thoughts and ideas when you are hungry and thirsty, but when you first eat good, pure food and also drink pure, good wine, the things you say and conclude will in a very short time be of a much different nature. And this is because the soul is then also satiated and strengthened. If you would not take any food and drink for a long time, your thinking, speaking and concluding would be very poor.

[7] Once the food has delivered its important part to the body, to its nerves and to its soul, the actual impure part of the matter that you took to enliven your body, is removed from the body by the 2 natural paths. However, if a person becomes a glutton in every respect and has made his belly as his idol, then the food that was

taken, as well as the too much wine that was poured into the stomach, cannot be completely separated in the 2 stomachs, which I explained. By that, still many more parts, which have to enliven the body, the nerves and the soul, but which were not extracted from the food, come into the big belly and the intestines and for another part via the liver and the spleen in the urine bladder. There they will again cause fermentations out of which in the course of time will develop all kinds of sicknesses for the body, and which will make the soul lazy, dull and insensible.

[8] However, out of those bad elements, another bad thing will often result from that. Because when the bad, still unfermented nature spirits from the atmosphere of such person will clearly notice that in his belly and his lower body already a great number of nature spirits have gathered who are related to them, they will soon penetrate the body of such person and unite themselves with those similar spirits in the body.

[9] Once this has happened, things look already very bad for such person. Soon a number of difficult to heal or incurable diseases will seize not only his body but also his soul, and he, being made very weak and lazy in himself, cannot avoid that they pass into his sensual and suffering flesh.

[10] To avoid that a soul becomes completely materialistic, there are no other means than the big diseases of the body itself. Such a person loses then every lust for food and tries to remove the old filth from his body by means of drugs. Here and there he will reach a kind of healing but never completely, and such person only has to be a little forgetful and he will have enlivened his former tormenting spirits again, and his second suffering condition is then usually worse than the first one.

[11] But all this is not the only bad condition which man has caught because of his lust for food and drinking. A third much worse one comes with it, and this consists of so-called 'being possessed' by one or several really evil spirits who shortly or longer ago have really lived their life in a body of some person for the trial of their freedom.

[12] No earthly doctor can free people from this third evil, but only I and the one who received from Me the power and might for it.

92. THE MOST IMPORTANT FOOD FOR MAN



O if man wants to stay completely healthy in body and soul, from childhood he must moderately nourish himself with pure food.

[2] Look at Me. I am also a human being for what My body is concerned, but I eat and drink always the same food and quench My thirst with pure, good and healthy wine, but always in the right measure. And what I eat and drink now before your eyes, I already ate and drank in My childhood years, as well as most of My disciples here who were almost all fishermen and lived from fish.

[3] When they had a surplus of fish they caught, they received money, and with that they bought the necessary clothes, bread, salt and also wine which they drank in moderation with water, and ask them if one of them was ever tormented by a sickness, except the one who I do not wish to specifically indicate to you.

[4] I say to you: if people would have stayed with the food that was indicated by the prophet Moses, the doctors with their medicines would never have had any work to do for them. But they began to stuff their body – just like the pagans in the manner of the epicures – with hundreds of different so-called delicacies and by that, after a short time, they fell into all kinds of sicknesses.

[5] A good kind of fish that stays in clean water and that is prepared in the manner as we have eaten is the healthiest food for the human body.

[6] Where such fishes cannot be found, wheat and barley bread are in itself the healthiest food for humans, as well as the milk from healthy cows, goats and sheep. Among the pulses, lentils are in first place, and, like with the preparation of pulp, the big Persian maize grain. Only the flesh of a few chickens and doves, then of a healthy and clean bovine animal, and also of goats and sheep, in a completely bloodless condition, can be eaten as food – fried or

cooked, but fried is to be preferred to cooked.

[7] However, the blood of animals should not be eaten by anyone.

[8] What I told you now is and remains for men the simplest, purest and healthiest food. All the rest – especially when it is eaten in excess – is harmful for man, especially when it is not prepared in such a way that the evil of the nature spirits is completely removed from it.”

[9] Now **the supreme judicial city officer** asked Me: “O Lord and Master, then how about the many kinds of very good tasting fruits and roots?”

[10] **I** said: “The eatable fruits must in the first place be completely ripe. In that condition they can be eaten with measure. But nevertheless, it is healthier when they are in a cooked, fried or dried form than raw, because by the boiling, frying and drying the bad and still unfermented nature spirits of life are removed from them. It is the same with roots.

[11] You know the fruits and the roots that are good for men’s consumption. However, the hungry and gluttonous people will not be satisfied with that, but they constantly still discover a great number of things to eat, from the plant kingdom as well as from the animal kingdom, and the results of this are the ever increasing, most various physical sicknesses.

[12] Based on what I have told you now, you will be able to conclude with little effort for yourself that for Me it is actually one and the same thing to, by My will, provide a field with some kind of grain, fill your granaries with already ripe grain or to put a prepared bread before you or anyone else, and also to multiply it if that were necessary. And so it is the same with all kinds of flesh, for if I can create living animals, it also will not be impossible for Me to create their flesh, to also prepare it and in this prepared condition to always multiply it as needed.

93. THE LORD AS THE ALMIGHTY CREATOR



LOOK, in the first times I created only one big sun – immeasurably huge for your understanding – and when you watch the firmament at night you will see that it is strewn with mere stars. And look, all those stars, with the exception of the few wandering stars¹ that you know, are also suns around which celestial bodies like this Earth are moving.

[2] In addition to these stars that you can see at the firmament at night, imagine an enormous big space of more than 1,000 times 1,000. And look, all those many suns and other celestial bodies that are countless to you, came forth in the course of times after times from that one first created big sun. Of course not yet completely ripe and ready, but like seed corns from the ear of a stalk that have the capability to reproduce themselves.

[3] But now I ask you: who actually provided the matter that was necessary to further develop and produce the big celestial bodies?"

[4] The **supreme judicial city officer** said: "Who else but You, o Lord and Master?"

[5] I said: "If you can understand that, My dear friend, you also will realize that it must be equally possible for Me to multiply a too little fried lamb on our table and to make it bigger in the same manner as I was able in the course of times after times to let the numberless many suns and celestial bodies come into a visible existence from that one, extremely big first sun and put them powerfully and actively in their places according to their characteristics.

[6] Look, a stone is for you a completely dead thing, and if you would have a stone here, I immediately could increase it to enormous dimensions or also immediately dissolve the biggest stone, in such a way that nothing would be left for your earthly sense organs *to notice it*, or I could immediately change it into fertile soil.

¹ The planets.

[7] And it is the same whether I gradually produce everything on some celestial body according to a certain order, or very suddenly, in one moment, if that were necessary.

[8] The fact that everything is developed gradually and as it were one out of the other is especially caused by My love, patience and meekness for the people, in the first place especially on this Earth, and then also for those people who live on other celestial bodies that go through their test to live in freedom. Look, the whole eternal, endless space is My actual home, and in that home are also infinitely many dwelling places which you once will come to know in My Kingdom.

[9] Do you understand now, My dear friend, how it was possible for Me to make the fried lamb bigger and multiply it?"

[10] Being completely overwhelmed in his mind the **supreme judicial city officer** said: "O Lord and Master, I do understand this now of course a little better than at first, but I feel as if totally destroyed before Your infinite greatness and majesty. I still feel that I exist, but besides that I also feel that compared to You I am as good as nothing."

[11] **I** said: "Nevertheless, you are, just like any other human being, from Me and by Me also infinite and eternal. Do you want to be more? But as to how, you will be aware when My Spirit is awakened in you."

94. THE CONFESSION OF PETER AND HIS REQUEST TO EXPLAIN THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER



WHEN I finished this teaching, Simon Judah, who was named **Peter**, stood up and said: “Lord, we all thank You also for this great lesson, for only now I feel deep in my mind that for what Your body is concerned, You are the Son of God and therefore also really the Christ about who the prophets frequently prophesied, but also already before Moses, starting with Abraham, the great enlightened first grand patriarch of men. I really do not know anymore with what other question I could bother You, for everything seems to clearly float now like a great image before my eyes.”

[2] Then **I** said: “Simon Judah, you have spoken rightly because it is so, but nevertheless you will flee with the other sheep when the Shepherd will be hit, because man must first show many proofs of his faith before he will be perfected and be like his Master. Remember therefore My words that it will also happen to you that you will completely deny Me before the world. You will repent again and strengthen your weak faith, but not out of yourself but out of My Spirit in you that will strongly pull you by the hair to it.”

[3] On this, **Simon Judah** said: “Lord and Master, it is remarkable of You that You can never predict something really nice about us, while we were with You from the beginning, and for Your sake we left everything, like our fields, houses, wives and children.”

[4] **I** said: “If I would have created and called you only for this world, I also could predict good worldly things to you, but since I called you only for Me and for My Kingdom in the beyond, why do you care when I cannot predict anything good or nice about you for what this world is concerned? Because you know that the actual bad and dark world will only love and make happy those who are like it. But when they are not like that, it will persecute and condemn them.

[5] But just like Me, you are not from this world but from above.

Therefore, the world persecutes and hates us. And since this is so and not otherwise, I cannot predict for you, My dear Simon Judah, for what this world is concerned, anything else but the same as I have always predicted for you. Do you understand that?"

[6] On this, **Simon Judah** said: "O Lord and Master, I do understand it, but it is the same with me as with our friend the supreme judicial city officer – we are completely destroyed by Your infinite perfection and Your personal presence.

[7] But now that I am speaking anyway, I would like to ask You for a further explanation about a parable of the Kingdom of God that You once gave us near Besetha¹. You gave us an explanation at that time that was very good, but the image itself, even with the best of my will I could not really understand it.

[8] The image or parable sounded like this: that the Kingdom of God, which is the same as the Kingdom of Heaven, is like a sower who went out to sow wheat on his field. While he was sowing, a part fell on the paths and roads. Soon this was partly trampled down and partly eaten by birds. So they did not germinate and did not produce any fruit. Another part fell on rocks and stones, germinated as long as they still had moisture, but this was soon not the case anymore, so that the seeds had no more food, withered and did also not produce any fruit. A part of the seeds of wheat fell between thorns and bushes, germinated, but were soon overgrown by the thorns and bushes, suffocated and did therefore produce no fruit either. Only a part fell in good soil and produced fruit a hundredfold.

[9] That was the image, o Lord and Master, that You told us. And when we asked You: Where and how?, You said to us: To you it is given to understand the secrets of the Kingdom of God, but not the others, as it is written in the Scripture: 'They will look and still not see anything, listen and still not hear or understand.'

[10] After that, You explained the image to us and we were all very satisfied with the explanation, but till now not completely

¹ Possibly Bethsaida.

with the image itself.

[11] If You, o Lord and Master, meant us who are appointed to spread among the people Your teaching, which is the actual Kingdom of God on Earth, and the sower represented us, then Your image would be completely correct, but if You represented Yourself as the sower, the image seems again very strange to me, for I really cannot imagine a wise sower who would sow three quarters of his noble seed where experience teaches him after a very long time that paths and roads, rocks and stones, thorns and bushes are absolutely not suitable to sow noble wheat on it since such places can never produce any fruit. And the sower will certainly be wise enough to prepare first a field that is suitable for sowing before he will sow his wheat on it, so that it will produce a hundredfold fruit to him.

[12] But You, o Lord and Master, are as sower infinitely much wiser than all of us will ever be, and so I think that I would commit a big sin if I would take You for such unwise sower. But if You represented us, Your disciples, as that unwise sower, then, as said, Your image is completely correct, for there is still much foolishness and ignorance in us.

[13] Besides, You already warned us several times that we should not throw Your pearls – which are the same as the pure wheat and therefore also the same as the Kingdom of God – to the swine. And I think that with this image You also meant to say that we should not sow Your wheat on paths and roads, on rocks and stones and between thorns and bushes, because they will not produce any fruit there. Lord and Master, did I clear up Your parable in the right manner?”

95. PROCLAIMING THE GOSPEL TO ALL CREATURES



SAID: “Now My Spirit becomes finally active in you. For if you would have a better memory, you also would remember that later at a good opportunity I explained this image in such a way to you that at the spreading of My teaching you will not act like the unwise sower who also strew the wheat on roads, stones and bushes, but like the wise sower who sowed his wheat in good soil. Look, I already told you once that you should go into the whole world and proclaim My gospel to all creatures. Tell Me, Simon Judah, how did you actually understand that?”

[2] **Simon Judah** said: “O Lord and Master, with this Your holy question, You moved away a very big stone from my chest, because with Your appeal to us, came, at least in me, the ridiculous thought that You seriously wanted that later we not only had to proclaim Your gospel to the appropriate people who actually represent a good field, but also to the mountains, forests, lakes and rivers, to all the birds and all the animals that live in the air, all animals on Earth and even to all the fishes in the water. Because the creatures are all the things that are created by You, and if we had to proclaim Your gospel in the whole world to all creatures, my mind could impossibly think anything different than to literally accomplish what You assigned to us.

[3] It is not sure that in doing this work we could completely save our skin, especially with the devouring beasts of the desert. Your will is of course Lord over everything, and if we also would do it literally, we probably would have to fear less the fierceness and anger of those animals than the pride and selfishness of the worldly people. But it obviously would be very difficult for us to use a language that is also understandable to such creatures.

[4] They say that in the big India there are truly people who can talk to the animals, but I never saw anything like that, and therefore one cannot believe such fable. So the latter is according to me the wisest.”

[5] I said: “Look, Simon Judah, if we view the image of the sower in relation to you and to you all, it will be clearer to you than before regarding his foolishness, for if you understood My symbolic call to proclaim My gospel to all creatures as you just said, you gave already testimony to yourself that your intellect as sower is still not so profound yet.

[6] And still, with this image I made a right and truthful call to you all. Look, if you proclaim My gospel to the right people, they will become by that wise and mighty in all things by My Spirit in them, and then, with My power, they will also win the less suitable people for My teaching.

[7] I placed man on this Earth to be ruler and lord over all creatures – which however he is no more for already a long time, and he must on the contrary let himself be dominated by the creatures of this Earth. But if, by My Spirit, he will become again what he should be, he will be again lord and ruler over all creatures and be capable to let them serve him and be useful to him.

[8] Now if man will be able to accomplish that, is that not the same as to say: My gospel is proclaimed to all creatures? For if you, with My might in you, can order a lion, a tiger or a bear to go away to where his place is – as you saw Me doing already several times – it will be also clear to you that My word and will is understood by all creatures.

[9] Did I not tell you already several times that you all, if you would have faith without doubting, you could even say to a mountain: ‘Lift yourself up and throw yourself into the sea’, and it will happen as you said? And if My word in you is already understood by the mountains, then all the other creatures will certainly understand it also. But of course, for this, first the real wisdom of a sower is needed.

[10] And so My dear Simon Judah, now you certainly will understand the image of the sower more clearly than up to now. If there is still something else that you understood in the same manner as My call to proclaim My gospel to all creatures, come forward with it.”

**96. THE IMAGES OF PULLING OUT THE EYES,
CUTTING OFF THE HANDS AND THE
EATING AND DRINKING OF THE FLESH AND
BLOOD OF THE LORD**



IMON Judah said: “Lord and Master, I still have something. Actually from the time of Your famous sermon on the mount, and honestly, I am ashamed to bring it forward because my foolishness will become clearer by that.”

[2] **I said:** “Well then, what did I say in that sermon on the mount that is still not well digested in your mind?”

[3] **Then Simon Judah said with a little voice:** “O, there was that speech about the pulling out of eyes and the cutting off of hands if one or the other should irritate us, for it would be better to be accepted into Heaven with one eye and with one hand than to descend in Hell with two eyes and two hands.

[4] I surely know, o Lord and Master, that You only meant this spiritually, but despite the explanation that You gave us, we still could not thoroughly grasp the spiritual and we still hung on for certainly three quarters to the always still somewhat strange sounding literal meaning, and we did really not understand how we should handle it to just pull out the eye in case an eye should irritate us. Making one eye blind would be easier in every respect but to cut off a hand would in most cases be much more difficult, for firstly one does not always carry a sharp axe, and secondly cutting off a hand would be especially very difficult if in case I should have to cut off my right hand, because I am really clumsy with my left hand in this activity.

[5] I know, o Lord and Master, that I brought forward something very stupid and worth to be laughed at, but what is the use to say those things in Your sermon on the mount if I was not able to understand its true spiritual meaning, just like I did not well understand Your sermon in Capernaum in which You also explicitly ordered to eat Your flesh and drink Your blood because otherwise one could not receive eternal life and enter Your

Kingdom?

[6] That parable was clarified to us by the clever innkeeper, which clarification was confirmed by Yourself to be good and true. And we were all completely satisfied with that, but we still did not succeed to understand the mentioned mutilation of the body. And when we will spread Your sermon on the mount further among the people, there really could be here and there weak people who could literally execute that teaching. The wiser part of the people would then call that teaching cruel and unwise and we will not reap many good fruits by that.

[7] It finally could happen that by that a completely weak congregation will become one-eyed and one-handed, and that very blind pious parents would perhaps out of precaution execute such mutilation on their children to prevent them later from being irritated by that one eye or that one hand.”

[8] **On this I said to Simon Judah:** “Regarding this, you should go to My dear John who, already immediately after the sermon on the mount, was able to explain the spiritual truth of that image. And then you also will clearly realize that I did not command any physical mutilation with that but only to seriously watch over the always free will of man and his mind. Do you understand that?”

[9] **Now Simon Judah said:** “O Lord and Master, with Your last two words You have clarified the matter to me, and so I can leave brother John alone because it stands now clear before my eyes that the mind of man is the eye of the soul and the will the active hand.

[10] But man has two eyes and two hands and thus also two minds and two wills, namely a good and a bad mind and therefore also a good and a bad will.

[11] If the bad mind irritates the good one, one should recognize it and forever give up the bad mind, and so also one should do the same with the will. And it is of course also better to enter the Kingdom of Heaven with your good mind and will than go to Hell with two minds and two wills. For I believe now that if someone, according to the condition of his love for the world, will let himself be tempted to all kinds of actions, one time by his bad

mind and his bad will and another time by his good mind and good will, is already an arch devil on this world. For if some other person, as a result of his early education, has only a bad mind and a bad will and who can therefore also not act any differently than badly, is basically not an actual evil devil but rather a foolish devil for whom can still be prayed to You: ‘Lord, forgive him and make him better, for he did not know up to now what he did.’ O Lord and Master, be so merciful to tell me if this perception of mine is now good and correct.”

[12] **I** said to Simon Judah: “Now your perception is good and correct, but you also will have noticed that it was not your flesh who inspired you to this but only My Spirit in you. Therefore, you also should try to completely get rid of your worldly mind and worldly will, then the heavenly understanding of the spirit and the power of the heavenly will, will be completely your own.

[13] **If** you still have something in connection with the teaching that I gave to the people, let it hear, for today I am disposed to make all things straight that seem uneven to you.”

97. HOW TO APPLY THE COMMANDMENT OF NEIGHBORLY LOVE



WHEN Simon Judah said: “Yes, Lord and Master, there are still a few things which are not completely straight in my mind. But I think by myself: since that which seemed most uneven to me became straight very easily, in time the less uneven lines of my mind will become completely straight by itself.”

[2] **I** said: “Then bring forward what still seems somewhat uneven to you.”

[3] **Simon Judah** said: “Lord, this I want to do, but not so gladly, because with that I will show the other disciples that I am maybe in every respect dumber than they are. But since You wish it, I also will speak and humble myself before all my companions.

[4] Look, on the occasion that You taught us and the people about the love for God and the neighbor, You also indicated that we even

should love our arch enemies and bless those who curse us, do good to those who treat us badly, and to the one who slaps us we should turn our other cheek instead of slapping him in return.

[5] I perceive that by this way of acting, the neighborly love that is taught by You, and Your advice to put it into practice, will assume its true heavenly form. For if we human beings have to do all that – namely to wish and will for others which under the same circumstances they also will do for us – then it is of course also completely justified to even love our enemies, pray for those who curse us and do good to those who treat us badly. But there are still a few things that are uneven to me. And this because in these cases self defense is completely set aside. We can apply this to people who are not going too far in their evilness against other people, but regarding people who stubbornly became true arch devils to their fellowmen, there should be a little exception in Your divine teaching.

[6] I am not talking about the slap, and I really would not mind if on some occasion someone would slap me not too hard, and if in the end he would like to give me another one, to turn also my other cheek to him, so that there can be peace and unity between us. But what if my adversary almost beat me half to death with his first slap? Should I then not rather defend myself if this would be possible to me in one way or another, instead of letting this angry giant of a Samson beat me completely to death?

[7] I think, o Lord and Master, that in the teaching that You established about neighborly love – of course only according to the opinion of my worldly reason – there are still a lot of things that are uneven which are not so easily to digest by the straight stomach of our mind. I do not know if I spoke wisely or unwisely, but since I still believe that my worldly reason is of a better nature, because otherwise I hardly would have recognized You as the Lord and Master, I also am of the opinion that exactly this better nature of my reason can also recognize such uneven things.”

[8] **I said: “You have asked a very good and right question, but I must nevertheless always make the remark to you that although**

you have a very sharp reason, you also have on the other hand a weak memory because of your advanced age. Therefore, you do not remember many things anymore of the explanations that I gave to the people on different occasions about the true neighborly love.

[9] It is in itself very clear that one should not behave too friendly in front of an arch evil person in order not to give him more opportunity to let his evilness grow and become always more evil than he was before.

[10] In this case, a continuous indulgence would mean nothing else than a true support for the too strongly growing evilness of the enemy. But for this reason I appointed at all times severe judges and gave them the right to chastise and to punish the people who became too bad and evil, this according to what they deserve. And that is why I also gave you the commandment that you should be submitted to the worldly authority, whether it is mild or severe.

[11] So if someone has such terrible enemy, he should go to a worldly judge and report it to him. Then that one will drive out the evilness of the person who became arch evil.

[12] If only physical chastisement will not help, it will finally help with the sword. And so it is the same with the slap. If you receive it from a less evil person who was tempted to it by a sudden impulse of his temper, *do not resist*, so that he will become milder by the fact that you did not slap him in return and you will then again easily become good friends again without worldly judge.

[13] If someone comes to you in full anger with a murderous slap, then you also have the fullest right to resist. Look, if it were not so, I would not have told you to also shake off the dust from your feet in a place over those people who not only do not want to accept you, but moreover mock you and threaten you with all kinds of persecution.

[14] O, be sure that with My preaching about neighborly love I did not abolish the might and the authority of the sword in the least, but I made it milder as long as the enmity among the people does not reach the degree which one could very rightfully call 'hellish'.

[15] With the elders who lived according to the law of Moses and

with most of the judges it was said: ‘A life for a life, an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth’. But as for you, you should not take such laws too literally. And *it was said* that you should not forgive your enemies more than 7 times, about which I gave you already several times an explanation, which you also understood well.

[16] But as said, with that I did not abolish the law of Moses, the judges or the prophets, but I only made it milder, because they took those laws too literally and punished with the same severity also the one who caused some harm to his fellowman but which in many cases happened more accidentally than of as a result of his evil will.

[17] Since the judges adhered too strictly to the law, it also happened that the people in the time of Samuel, the last judge of Israel, wanted a king from Me because they were hoping that the laws would be milder compared to those among the judges. The people were greatly mistaken in this, especially with king Saul who chastised them even more severely than the former judges. But under David and also under Salomon things happened more humane than among the judges.

[18] But under the later kings, especially when the kingdom was divided among several kings, it became worse than under the judges. And when it finally became too much, there was no other possibility than to submit all the Jews and also many of their neighboring tribes, with whom the Jews were in continuous conflict, to the united power of Rome, because in worldly respect Rome had the best, wisest and most efficient laws. And look, then at once there was complete rest and order among the Jews as well as among their neighboring nations.

[19] But when the Jews will gradually become more rebellious and the priests of the Jews will more and more indicate that the laws of Rome are blasphemous and will curse the better Jews because they are friends of the Romans, then the Romans will rise again and enter this kingdom with great power and destroy it in such a way that no stone will stand unbroken upon another. After that, the Jews themselves will be scattered over the whole world, and then

it will also happen what I told you beforehand, namely that the Jews should pray that the time of their flight will not take place in the winter and also not on a Sabbath, because then it will be worse for them than in another season or on a working day. That flight will be especially difficult for the pregnant women.

[20] In that time, two Jews will also sleep in one bed, the one, who is a known friend of the Romans, will be spared and the stubborn Jew will be rejected. So there will also be two others grinding in one mill. Also there, for the same reason, the one will be spared, the other rejected. The one who works in the field, let him not return to his house to take his coat, and the one who repairs the roof of his house, let him not come down from the roof into his house to take something. It will be better for him to jump from the roof to the ground and try to save his life by escaping, for if he will come down into his house, he will certainly lose his life. But if he will jump from the roof he can at best still keep his life and save himself by escaping.

[21] Look, My dear Simon Judah, I predicted already many times all these things to you and to many other Jews and Pharisees, and I am sure that in all these things you will not discover any uneven lines.”

98. THE UNFAITHFUL STEWARD



IMON Judah said: “O Lord and Master, absolutely no more as far as this is concerned, but there are still two other things that are not completely clear to me, but I hope that by Your love and mercy, also these two little things will in a certain way be resolved by itself.”

[2] **I** said: “Name at least those two little things.”

[3] **Simon Judah** said: “O Lord and Master, this is actually not worthed, but since You want it. It is concerning Your praise about the unfaithful steward and the rejection of the guest at the dinner because he had no festive clothing. For in this, there are two things that cannot be understood. Firstly, how and where were the guests

provided with the required festive clothing after they were picked up at the fences and alleys by the servants of the host and were pushed inside to partake of the guest meal? And secondly why that one poor devil, who was also urged to the guest meal by the servants of the host, had to be thrown out because he had no festive clothing? Look, o Lord and Master, that man who was thrown out and Your praise about the unfaithful steward are for me still two uneven lines which I was not yet able to put straight.”

[4] **I said: “Did I not say to you at that time: ‘Be like the unfaithful steward and gather friends by the unrighteous mammon. Then later, if you were still to be without home, they will accept you into their heavenly homes?’**

[5] **But so that you, Simon Judah, would well understand this, you should listen to Me, but with your two ears at the same time, so that the one ear would not let out what the other ear has picked up and will then stay behind in your heart. Look, every earthly rich person who possesses much more goods and money than he needs for his earthly livelihood, is compared to Me more or less an unrighteous steward because I am the only true owner of the goods, and the goods that he calls his own are all together unrighteous mammon.**

[6] **If he then will at least generously remember the poor when the nature of his sicknesses, which are My messengers, will very clearly say to him: ‘The Lord of these goods has many things against you regarding your unrighteous way of doing, and from now on you will be no more steward’, then he will make friends by giving generously to the many poor, and when he soon after that will leave, naked and deserted, and will go to them in My Kingdom, they will take care of him and generously reward him for his good work.**

[7] **Look, when I created the Earth I did not put border stones, I did not measure the Earth with a rope and I thus did also not say: ‘Look, this part belongs to him, the other to another’, but I made the whole Earth as a common possession for all human beings. Only in the course of time the miserliness, greed and lust for**

power of men began to measure the Earth and with force they determined: ‘This big piece of land belongs to me, and whoever wants to serve me and work for me, will in a certain way receive a little piece of land by renting it, but despite that, I remain lord over the whole big piece of land.’

[8] And look, that was the first so-called patriarchic statute among the people, and no matter how unrighteous it was in itself, it was nevertheless the best and most righteous one, for when the patriarch was as usual a good and God-fearing man, then his citizens or small renters were also doing well at his side, for he took care of the general welfare of the big piece of land.

[9] Although he possessed for himself and his house many thousands of times more than he needed, and he was thus also an unrighteous steward, but he used his unrighteous mammon for only good purposes that were pleasing to Me, and by that he made many big friends among his citizens according to My will and satisfaction, and I also had to show him My pleasure and praise.

99. THE EXPLANATION OF THE PARABLE OF THE UNRIGHTEOUS STEWARD AND THE ROYAL GUEST MEAL



O the patriarch Abraham, who was the owner of the Promised Land, was also an unrighteous steward, but you surely heard that in Salem, the place where he lived, he always had a big table ready where every day several thousands of poor and needy people were satiated, and so it became a proverb that the happy ones were those who were blessed to eat at the table of Abraham.

[2] Look, that is why Abraham was My favorite and I blessed him and his family manifold, which you can conclude from the fact that Abraham was the most important and greatest friend of the King of Kings and the Priest of priests, who was without beginning or end and whose name was Melchisedech, to whom he personally gave the tithe. And he was the only one among the many kings of that

time who was fortunate of having the right to come to the residence of Melchisedech. And this Person once went personally to him, escorted by 2 angels, and predicted to him that his aged wife Sarah would bare him a son, which Abraham also firmly believed.

[3] But at the same time, Melchisedech revealed that the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah would perish. And He further revealed to him that finally He Himself would come from his tribe as a human being of flesh and blood to make all human beings truly blissful.

[4] But let us leave Abraham and Melchisedech to rest now, because the latter is now personally sitting with you, and the old patriarch Abraham is in the spirit not far away from Him. Let us look now at another unrighteous steward who lives now near Jerusalem, and in whose house we will soon be staying. It is our Lazarus, a son of Simon the leper, whom I healed with My will without his knowledge, this already in My 12th year, even before I visited the temple. And this because in all righteousness he performed great good deeds to many thousands, no matter from where they came, by means of his large amount of unrighteous mammon, just like his son Lazarus is doing now.

[5] You know about all the things he did when we were accommodated several times in his city in his house. And look, the one who will use the unrighteous mammon in this manner, will certainly make many very good friends in My Kingdom and will also be pleasing to Me. And when he will die, I will immediately awaken him to life so that he will eternally die no more, and his passing over from this to the other world will be like what happened long ago with My dear Enoch who is now here sitting at My side as a real arch angel.

[6] With this, My dear Judah, I surely showed you now as clear as the sun to what My praise was referring to concerning the unrighteous steward, and with that I straightened out that one uneven line in you.

[7] Now there is still the one who was thrown out at My guest meal for the reason that he did not wear feast clothing and whom

you called ‘poor devil’.

[8] Look, those who were invited but did not appear and excused themselves because of their worldly activities, look those are only the very unrighteous stewards who did not deserve any praise from My part. But the others, those who were invited later in the alleys, streets and at the fences, are those who, although poor from an earthly point of view, were nevertheless innerly clothed with festive clothing by their righteous life according to My law.

[9] That one person, who also came to My guest meal, represented personally the stubborn institution of Pharisees, and he also took place at My guest table. However, when I came, which is now the case in the presence of you all, I saw, My dear Simon Judah, that this ‘poor devil’ of yours had no festive clothing, and therefore I ordered My servants to grab him and throw him out in the outer darkness.

[10] And see, that guest meal is what I am giving now since the time I appeared as Leader and Teacher of the people in this world. And you frequently noticed that at many different occasions such guests pushed themselves to My table, whom I always let them be thrown out the door by My word. And why actually? Because they had no festive clothing. Do you understand now, Simon Judah, what I wanted to point out with that guest who was not clothed in festive clothing at the table of My guest meal?”

[11] **Simon Judah** said: “Yes, Lord and Master, now I understand this clearer than the sun. And I add that at the table of Your guest meal it certainly will happen oftentimes that many more of such guests will appear without festive clothing, and I believe that it is time to remove such guests immediately from the dining table.”

[12] **I** said: “Indeed, but this cannot always be done in this world. Therefore, I will give you another image of a sower, to which you all will have to conform yourselves in the future. So listen.

100. THE PARABLE OF THE WEEDS BETWEEN THE WHEAT



HERE was once a landlord who had many vineyards, pastures, gardens and fields. He received a very noble and pure kind of wheat from his father and said then to his helpers: ‘Go and very carefully clean up a big field, so that when I sow that pure and noble wheat on the field, no weeds will come up between them.’

[2] The helpers did so, and the wheat was abundantly sown on the field that was cleaned up. It quickly germinated, and the lord of the field was really glad when he saw that no weeds between the wheat had germinated.

[3] But after some time, when the wheat was already growing high to form the ears, look, suddenly the helpers came to the landlord and said: ‘Lord, we have cleaned up the field and according to your will we have sown the pure wheat in it. It also came up purely, about which you yourself were very glad. But look now: now that the wheat must soon form the ears, suddenly there is a big quantity of weeds that come up between the wheat. If you want, we will go and cut the weeds from between it.’

[4] Then the lord of the field said: ‘Leave it alone, so that by your work you will also not damage the noble wheat that has already grown high. For I know that an enemy did this to me. So let everything become ripe, the wheat together with the weeds. When the wheat is ripe I will gather it by you, my servants, and bring it into my barn, and only after that I will let the weeds be bound in bundles, so that they will dry out. After that, we will ignite and burn them to further clean the field.’

[5] Look, this is the image from which you should learn what you should do regarding the weeds on My field of life.

[6] The noble wheat represents the people who were wearing correct festive clothing at My table of the guest meal, but the weeds represent entirely that guest who did not wear festive wedding clothing. He also took of the food that was set on the

table, till the sharp-sighted host came into the guestroom himself, which means the ripening of the noble wheat and the weeds.

[7] The guests who will be festively dressed will be spared, and those who will not be dressed in festive clothing will be thrown outside in the fire of wrath of the host, and finally he himself will purify the spoiled field by his burning.

[8] So in this world you will still meet a lot of guests who will not be festively clothed, and you will see a lot of weeds growing up between the pure wheat. But do not be too agitated about that and let everything ripen, and wait till the great Host will come Himself. Then with His coming will also come the right time for separation, and everyone will receive the reward to which his good or bad love has strived. For although there are in My house a lot of blissful homes, but besides that also a lot of dungeons, and those who prefer My many dungeons instead of the blissful homes, and will strife to live in them, will also receive what they wish. We will at no time pull them out of there with no matter what kind of power to let them defile our pure heavenly homes. But if they themselves will come up with better thoughts, then they will also not be limited in that. Did you understand all this now?"

TABLE OF CONTENTS

THE LORD ON THE WAY TO BETHSAIDA

1.	MEETING THE CARAVAN FROM DAMASCUS	2
2.	THE LORD’S WORDS TO THE MEN OF THE CARAVAN	4
3.	THE LORD TAKES ACCOMMODATION IN AN INN NEAR BETHSAIDA	6
4.	THE LORD REVEALS WHY THE SONS OF THE INNKEEPER STAY AWAY	8
5.	THE FAITH AND TRUST OF THE INNKEEPER	10
6.	THE LORD ASKS ABOUT THE MESSIAH	12
7.	THE LORD TESTIFIES OF HIMSELF	14
8.	THE DINNER WITH FISH	16
9.	THE SPIRITUAL OMNIPRESENCE OF THE LORD AND THE GUIDANCE OF HIS MERCY	18
10.	ABOUT THE SPREADING OF THE LORD’S TEACHING AND ABOUT BLESSINGS.....	21
11.	THE LORD EXPLAINS THE UNIVERSE TO OPPOSE SUPERSTITION	25
12.	EGYPTIAN ASTROLOGY AND OTHER ERRORS	27
13.	THE NECESSITY OF BEING CAREFUL IN TEACHING	29
14.	THE BLESSED LANDSCAPE	31
15.	THE SECOND SENDING OUT OF THE DISCIPLES	34
16.	SIMON JUDAH ASKS FOR LEADERSHIP	36
17.	THE POND OF THE INNKEEPER	38
18.	THE INNKEEPER TELLS THE GUESTS ABOUT THE CHANGED LAND	40
19.	THE GUESTS RECOGNIZE THE LORD	42
20.	THE CONFESSION OF THE ELDEST	44
21.	WHO IS MY NEIGHBOR?	46
22.	THE PARABLE OF THE LANDOWNER	48
23.	THE LORD PREDICTS HIS DEATH AND RESURRECTION	50

THE LORD IN 2 OTHER CITIES

24.	TRAVELING FURTHER	54
25.	THE LORD IN THE POOR INN OF THE BASALT CITY	55
26.	THE FISH MIRACLE	59
27.	THE LADY INNKEEPER AND HER SERVANTS	61

28.	THE LOVE FOR PEOPLE OF ANOTHER BELIEF	63
29.	ALLOWING ABUSES AND DEGENERATION AMONG THE PEOPLE	66
30.	THE CAUSE OF THE ILLNESS OF THE INNKEEPER'S SON	68
31.	THE 2 STRANGERS FROM NINEVEH	70
32.	THE RELIGIOUS SITUATION IN THE COUNTRY OF THE 2 STRANGERS	72
33.	GOD'S JUDGMENTS AND ITS CONSEQUENCES	74
34.	THE RESULT OF THE SPREADING OF THE GOSPEL. THE RETURN OF THE LORD	76
35.	THE QUESTION ABOUT THE RESURRECTION OF THE FAITHFULL ON THE YOUNGEST DAY	78
36.	THE LORD EXPLAINS HIS MERCY	80
37.	THE NOTION OF ETERNITY	82
38.	THE LAST JUDGMENT	84
39.	THE LORD GIVES JOHN AND MATTHEW ADVICE FOR THEIR ANNOTATIONS	86
40.	THE HISTORY OF THE BASALT CITY AND ITS ENVIRONMENT	88
41.	WHAT THE SUN ACTUALLY IS	91
42.	THE LORD PREDICTS THAT THE STRANGERS WILL BE ACCOMMODATED BY THEIR KING	94
43.	THE SPREADING OF THE LORD'S TEACHING IN BABYLON	95
44.	THE LORD BLESSES THE BARE REGION OF THE PERSISTING SHEPHERDS	99

THE LORD IN THE CITY IN NEBO

45.	THE LORD AND THE PHARISEES BEFORE THE CITY GATE	102
46.	THE WINE MIRACLE IN THE ROMAN INN	106
47.	THE DISCUSSION ABOUT THE WINE MIRACLE	109
48.	THE RELEASE AND THE CONVERSION OF THE PHARISEES WHO ARE WATCHED BY THE LIONS BEFORE THE CITY GATE	111
49.	THE PREDICTION OF THE LORD TO BARNABAS	114
50.	THE CONFESSION OF FAITH OF THE SUPREME JUDICIAL CITY OFFICER	117
51.	THE MATERIALISTIC CRITICISM OF THE SUPREME JUDICIAL CITY OFFICER ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF MAN	120

52.	THE LORD ASKS THE SUPREME JUDICIAL CITY OFFICER A FEW QUESTIONS TO THINK ABOUT	124
53.	THE ACTIVE POWERS	126
54.	THE LIFE IN THE BEYOND. THE INNER SPIRITUAL SIGHT.	128
55.	APPEARANCE OF A SPIRIT	130
56.	EXPERIENCES IN THE BEYOND	132
57.	GUIDANCE IN THE BEYOND	135
58.	QUESTIONS ABOUT HELL AND ITS SPIRITS	138
59.	THE IDOL IMAGES IN THE HOUSE OF THE INNKEEPER	140
60.	ON THE MOUNTAIN NEBO	142
61.	THE REMARKABLE SUNRISE	146
62.	THE DEGENERATION OF THE JEWISH TEACHING	148
63.	THE HOUSEGODS IN THE INN ARE DESTROYED	152
64.	THE CAUSES OF PHYSICAL SICKNESS	154
65.	THE BATTLE OF NATURE	158
66.	THE PURPOSE OF THE BATTLE OF NATURE	160
67.	THE EXAMPLE OF A JOINING OF ANIMAL SOULS	162
68.	THE LORD SEEMS TO FAVOR THE GENTILES	163
69.	THE LOVE OF THE LORD FOR THE JEWISH PEOPLE	165
70.	FALSE CHRISTS, FALSE PROPHETS AND FALSE WONDERS. ADVICES FOR THE CONDUCT OF THE DISCIPLES.	167
71.	THE DIFFICULTY OF BEING A TEACHER	172
72.	THE PRIEST OF APOLLO INQUIRES ABOUT THE LORD	175
73.	THE TRUE WORSHIP OF GOD AND PAGAN WORSHIP	178
74.	THE ORIGINS OF IDOLATRY	180
75.	THE ORIGINS OF APOLLO WORSHIP	182
76.	THE ADMONITION OF THE LORD TO LOVE AND TO BE PATIENT TO SPREAD HIS TEACHING	185
77.	THE OMNIPRESENCE AND ALMIGHTINESS OF THE LORD. THE NATURE OF THE SOUL AND THE PROCESS OF SEEING. ...	187
78.	AN IMAGE OF THE SPIRITUAL DEVELOPMENT OF MAN	191
79.	THE ASCEND AND DESCEND OF THE ANGELS	192
80.	THE APPEARANCE OF ANGELS	195
81.	THE ACTIVITIES OF THE ANGELS	197
82.	PROOF OF RAPHAEL'S POWER	200
83.	THE CHANGED REGION AT MOUNT NEBO	203
84.	RAPHAEL'S PROOF OF HIS SPEED	205
85.	THE SHINING STONE OF THE SUN	207

86.	THE ANIMAL MIRACLE OF RAPHAEL	210
87.	THE SURPRISED SERVANTS CATCH AND TAME THE ELEPHANTS	213
88.	THE BLISS OF THE PERFECTED SPIRITS	216
89.	THE CREATION IS INSCRUTABLE	218
90.	THE MIRACULOUS FEEDING IN THE INN	221
91.	THE PROCESS OF DIGESTION IN THE HUMAN BODY	225
92.	THE MOST IMPORTANT FOOD FOR MAN	227
93.	THE LORD AS THE ALMIGHTY CREATOR	229
94.	THE CONFESSION OF PETER AND HIS REQUEST TO EXPLAIN THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER	230
95.	PROCLAIMING THE GOSPEL TO ALL CREATURES	233
96.	THE IMAGES OF PULLING OUT THE EYES, CUTTING OFF THE HANDS AND THE EATING AND DRINKING OF THE FLESH AND BLOOD OF THE LORD	236
97.	HOW TO APPLY THE COMMANDMENT OF NEIGHBORLY LOVE	238
98.	THE UNFAITHFUL STEWARD	242
99.	THE EXPLANATION OF THE PARABLE OF THE UNRIGHTEOUS STEWARD AND THE ROYAL GUEST MEAL	244
100.	THE PARABLE OF THE WEEDS BETWEEN THE WHEAT	247
